

HANDBOOK



CITROËN C5



On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with CITROËN.

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- > the language,
- > the vehicle, its body style,
- > the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.



This handbook has been designed to help to make the most of your C5 in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C5 range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

Key



safety warning



additional information



contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,
a complete product range,
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,
getting to know each system,
each control, each setting,
makes your trips, your journeys
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview

Eco-driving

Monitoring

| | |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Instrument panels | 15 |
| Trip computer | 18 |
| Indicators | 21 |
| Adjustment buttons | 25 |
| Warning and indicator lamps | 26 |
| Monochrome screen C | 34 |
| Colour screen (eMyWay) | 37 |

Access

| | |
|----------------------------|----|
| Remote control key | 39 |
| Alarm | 44 |
| Electric windows | 47 |
| Doors | 49 |
| Boot | 52 |
| Sunroof (Saloon) | 55 |
| Panoramic sunroof (Tourer) | 56 |

Ease of use and comfort

| | |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Front seats | 58 |
| Steering wheel adjustment | 62 |
| Mirrors | 63 |
| Rear seats | 65 |
| Ventilation | 67 |
| Mono-zone digital air conditioning | 69 |
| Dual-zone digital air conditioning | 73 |
| Programmable heating | 77 |
| Courtesy lamps | 83 |
| Interior mood lighting | 84 |
| Interior fittings | 86 |
| Mats | 87 |
| Front armrest | 88 |
| Boot fittings | 91 |

Driving

| | |
|--|-----|
| Driving recommendations | 96 |
| Starting-switching off the engine | 97 |
| Manual parking brake | 100 |
| Electric parking brake | 101 |
| Hill start assist | 108 |
| 5-speed manual gearbox | 109 |
| 6-speed manual gearbox | 110 |
| 6-speed electronic gearbox system | 111 |
| Automatic gearbox | 116 |
| Gear shift indicator | 120 |
| Stop & Start | 121 |
| Tyre under-inflation detection | 124 |
| Fixed centred controls steering wheel | 126 |
| Speed limiter | 128 |
| Cruise control | 131 |
| Lane departure warning system | 134 |
| Parking space sensor | 135 |
| Parking sensors | 137 |
| Reversing camera (Tourer) | 139 |
| "Hydractive III +" electronic suspension | 140 |

Visibility

| | |
|--|-----|
| Lighting controls | 142 |
| Automatic illumination of headlamps | 146 |
| Headlamp adjustment | 147 |
| Directional lighting | 148 |
| Wiper controls | 150 |
| Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers | 152 |

Safety

6

| | |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Direction indicators | 154 |
| Hazard warning lamps | 154 |
| Horn | 155 |
| Emergency or assistance call | 155 |
| Braking assistance systems | 156 |
| Trajectory control systems | 157 |
| Seat belts | 160 |
| Airbags | 163 |

Practical information

8

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Fuel tank | 183 |
| Misfuel prevention (Diesel) | 184 |
| Running out of fuel (Diesel) | 187 |
| Temporary puncture repair kit | 188 |
| Changing a wheel | 192 |
| Snow chains | 198 |
| Changing a bulb | 199 |
| Changing a fuse | 210 |
| Battery | 216 |
| Energy economy mode | 219 |
| Towing the vehicle | 220 |
| Towing a trailer | 222 |
| Roof bars | 224 |
| Very cold climate protection | 225 |
| Cold climate screen | 226 |
| Advice on care and maintenance | 227 |
| Accessories | 228 |

Technical data

10

| | |
|---|-----|
| Petrol engines | 242 |
| Petrol weights | 243 |
| Diesel engines | 245 |
| Diesel weights | 247 |
| Diesel weights - commercial versions (Tourer) | 251 |
| Dimensions | 252 |
| Identification markings | 256 |

Audio and telematics

| | |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Emergency or assistance | 257 |
| eMyWay | 259 |
| Audio system | 313 |

Child safety

7

| | |
|---|-----|
| Child seats | 168 |
| Deactivating the passenger's front airbag | 171 |
| ISOFIX child seats | 178 |
| Child lock | 182 |

Checks

9

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| Bonnet | 231 |
| Petrol engines | 232 |
| Diesel engines | 233 |
| Checking levels | 235 |
| Checks | 239 |

Alphabetical index



Exterior (Saloon)

| | |
|--|-------|
| Remote control key | 39-43 |
| - opening / closing | |
| - battery | |
| Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting | 97-99 |
| Alarm | 44-46 |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| Very cold climate screen | 226 |
| Exterior lighting controls | 142-146 |
| Headlamp adjustment | 147 |
| Changing bulbs | 199-202 |
| - front lamps | |
| - Xenon headlamps | |
| - foglamps | |
| - direction indicator repeaters | |
| Lane departure warning system | 134 |
| Stop & Start | 121-123 |

| | |
|--------------|----|
| Door mirrors | 63 |
|--------------|----|

| | |
|---------------------|-------|
| Doors | 49-51 |
| - opening / closing | |
| - central locking | |
| - emergency control | |
| Child lock | 182 |
| Electric windows | 47-48 |

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| Tyre under-inflation detection | 124-125 |
| Braking assistance | 156 |
| Trajectory control | 157-159 |
| Tyre pressures | 256 |
| Snow chains | 198 |

| | |
|-------------------|---------|
| Accessories | 228-229 |
| Panoramic sunroof | 55 |
| Roof bars | 224 |

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Fuel tank | 183 |
| Misfuel prevention | 184 |

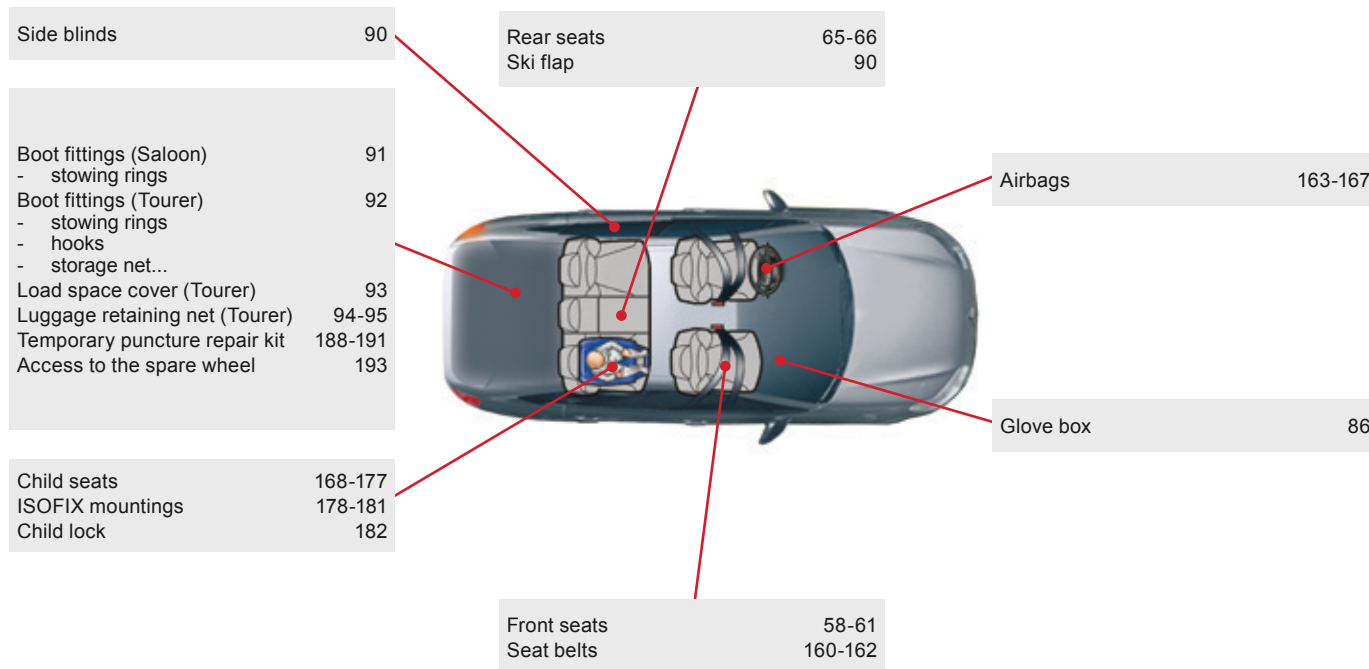
| | |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| Tailgate | 52 |
| Temporary puncture repair kit | 188-191 |
| Changing a wheel | 192-197 |
| - tools | |
| - removing | |

| | |
|--|---------|
| Front and/or rear visual and audible parking sensors | 137-138 |
| Towbar | 222-223 |
| Towing | 220-221 |

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| Changing bulbs | 199-202, 207 |
| - rear lamps | |
| - 3 rd brake lamp | |
| - number plate lamps | |



Interior



Exterior (Tourer)

| | |
|--|-------|
| Remote control key | 39-43 |
| - opening / closing | |
| - battery | |
| Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting | 97-99 |
| Alarm | 44-46 |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| Very cold climate screen | 226 |
| Exterior lighting controls | 142-146 |
| Headlamp adjustment | 147 |
| Changing bulbs | 199-202 |
| - front lamps | |
| - Xenon headlamps | |
| - foglamps | |
| - direction indicator repeaters | |
| Lane departure warning system | 134 |
| Stop & Start | 121-123 |

| | |
|--------------|----|
| Door mirrors | 63 |
|--------------|----|

| | |
|---------------------|-------|
| Doors | 49-51 |
| - opening / closing | |
| - central locking | |
| - emergency control | |
| Child lock | 182 |
| Electric windows | 47-48 |



| | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| Tyre under-inflation detection | 124-125 |
| Braking assistance | 156 |
| Trajectory control | 157-159 |
| Tyre pressures | 256 |
| Snow chains | 198 |

| | |
|-------------------|---------|
| Accessories | 228-229 |
| Panoramic sunroof | 56-57 |
| Roof bars | 224 |

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Fuel tank | 183 |
| Misfuel prevention | 184 |

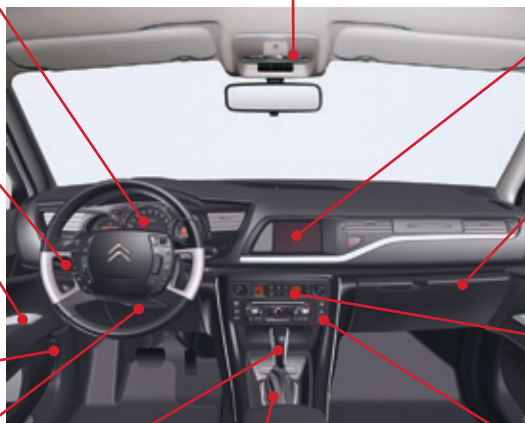
| | |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| Boot | 53-54 |
| Reversing camera | 139 |
| Temporary puncture repair kit | 188-191 |
| Changing a wheel | 192-197 |
| - tools | |
| - removing | |

| | |
|--|---------|
| Front and/or rear visual and audible parking sensors | 137-138 |
| Towbar | 222-223 |
| Towing | 220-221 |

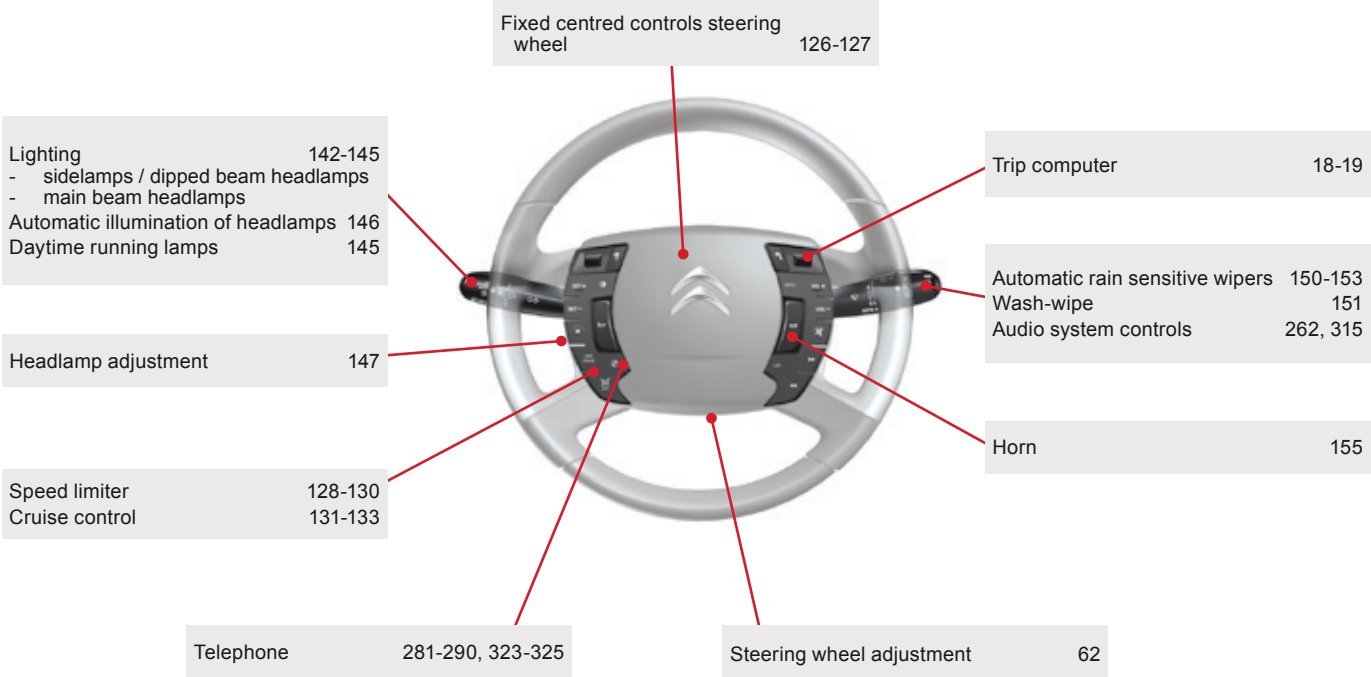
| | |
|----------------------|---------|
| Changing bulbs | 205-207 |
| - rear lamps | |
| - 3rd brake lamp | |
| - number plate lamps | |

Instruments and controls

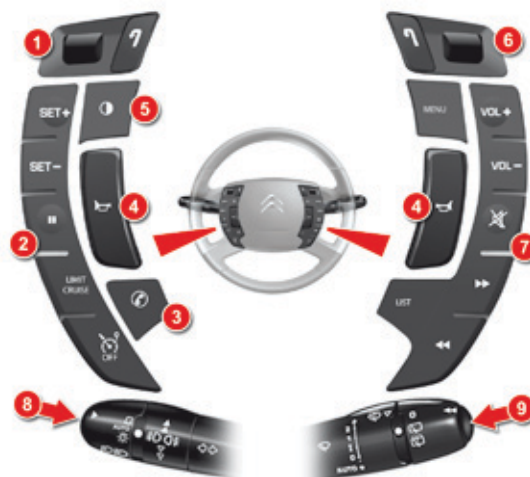
| | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|-------------------------|---------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| Instrument panels | 15 | Courtesy lamps | 83-84 | Stop & Start | 121-123 |
| Warning lamps | 26-33 | Rear view mirror | 64 | Multifunction screens | 34-38 |
| Indicators | 21-25 | Interior mood lighting | 84 | Hazard warning lamps | 154 |
| Gear shift indicator | 120 | Sun visor | 86 | | |
| Buttons | 25 | | | Interior fittings | 86-90 |
| - trip recorder | | | | - glove box | |
| - lighting dimmer | | | | - auxiliary sockets | |
| Parking space sensors | 135-136 | | | - mats... | |
| | | | | | |
| Dashboard fuses | 210-213 | | | Ventilation | 67-68 |
| | | | | Mono-zone digital air conditioning | 69-72 |
| Windows | 47-48 | | | Dual-zone digital air conditioning | 73-76 |
| Door mirrors | 63 | | | Programmable heating | 77-82 |
| | | | | | |
| Opening the bonnet | 231 | | | Emergency or assistance call | 155, 257-258 |
| | | | | eMyWay | 259-312 |
| Steering wheel adjustment | 62 | | | Audio system | 313-331 |
| | | | | Setting the date/time | 36, 38 |
| "Hydractive III +" electronic suspension | 140-141 | | | | |
| Manual / electronic / automatic gearboxes | 109-110, 111-115, 116-119 | Parking brake, manual | 100 | | |
| Hill start assist | 108 | Parking brake, electric | 101-107 | | |



Steering mounted controls



Fixed centred controls steering wheel



- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1. Instrument panel screen menu. | 4. Horn. | 7. Audio system. |
| 2. Cruise control and speed limiter. | 5. Black panel. | 8. Voice commands. |
| 3. Telephone. | 6. Navigation screen menu. | 9. MODE: selection of the type of information presented in the multifunction screen. |

Switch panels

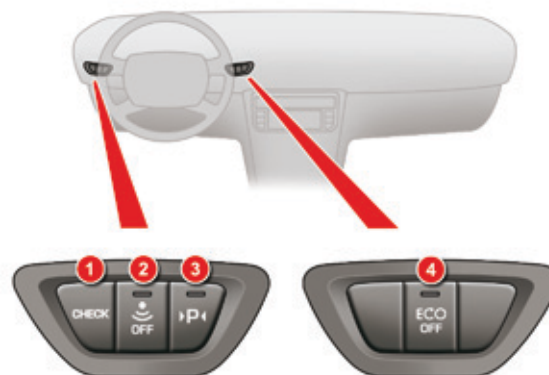
Central

| | |
|--|---------|
| 1. ASR/DSC. | 157-159 |
| 2. Visual and audible parking sensor system. | 137-138 |
| 3. Lane departure warning system. | 134 |
| 4. Central locking. | 49-50 |
| 5. CITROËN Localised Assistance Call. | 258 |
| 6. CITROËN Localised Emergency Call. | 258 |

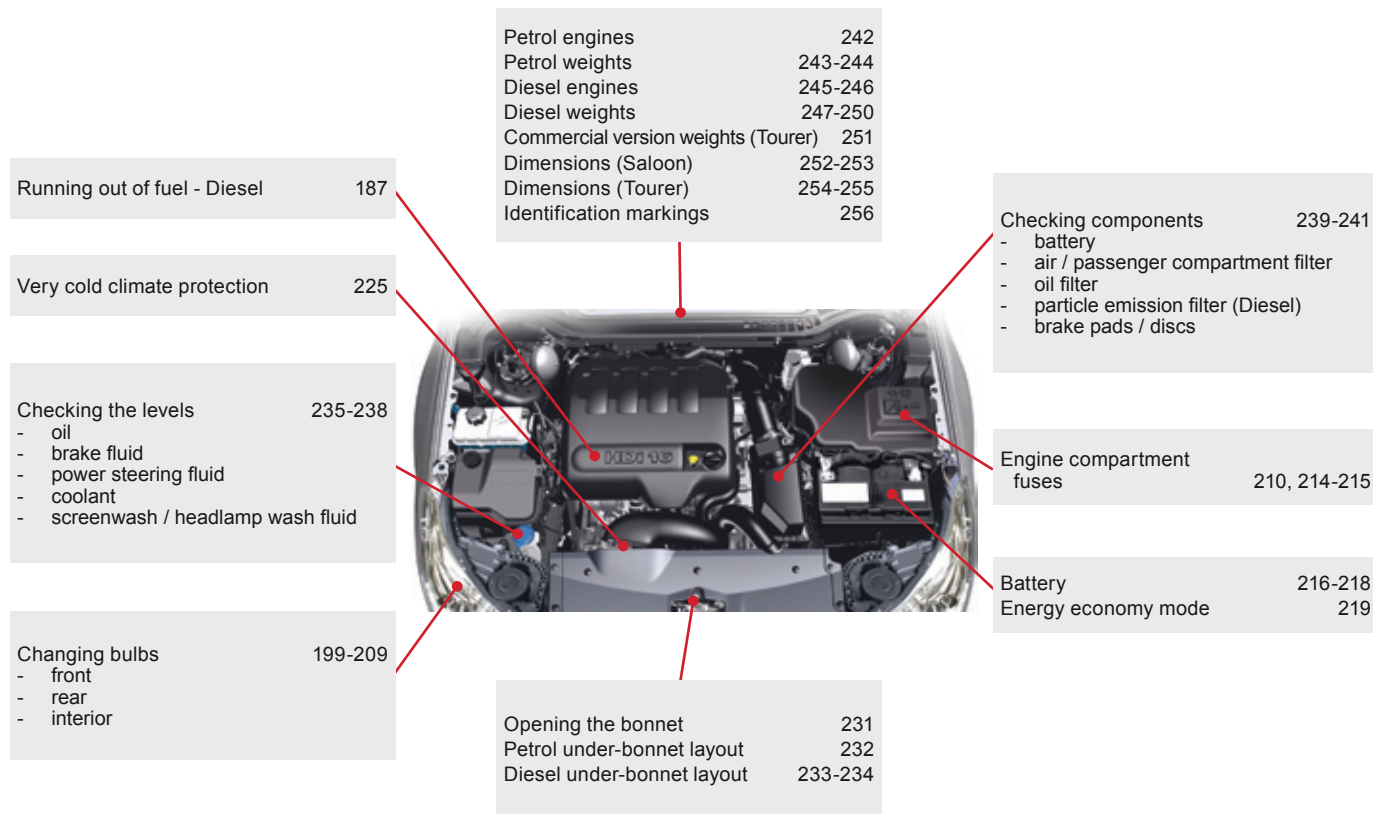


Side

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| 1. CHECK (vehicle self-test). | 20 |
| 2. Volumetric alarm. | 44-46 |
| 3. Parking space sensor system. | 135-136 |
| 4. Stop & Start. | 121-123 |



Technical data - Maintenance



Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic. Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel. Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

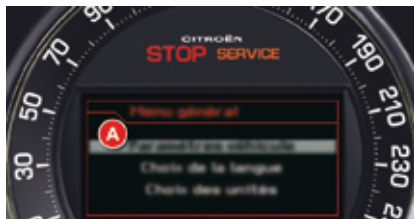
Instrument panels - petrol and Diesel - manual and automatic gearbox

Panel grouping together the dials and vehicle operation indicator and warning lamps.



- A. Fuel gauge
- B. Indicator:
 - Coolant temperature
 - Cruise control/Speed limiter information
- C. Speedometer
- D. Rev counter
- E. Indicator:
 - Engine oil temperature
 - Gear lever position and gear engaged (Automatic gearbox)
- F. Controls:
 - Lighting dimmer
 - Resetting to zero of trip mileage computer and maintenance indicator
- G. Instrument panel screen indicating:
 - Depending on the page selected with the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel:
 - Digital speed repeater
 - Trip computer
 - Navigation (guidance) information
 - Display of message alerts
 - Engine oil level check
 - Service indicator
 - Permanently:
 - Trip mileage recorder
 - Total mileage recorder

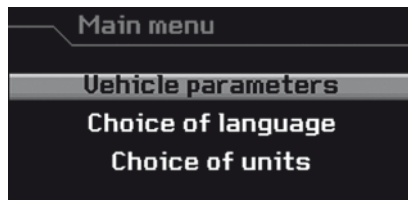
Main menu



The instrument screen **A** is located in the centre of the instrument panel.

- With the vehicle stationary, you can access the main menu of the screen by quickly pressing on the left-hand thumb wheel **B** on the steering wheel.
- Whilst driving, the message "**Action impossible while driving**" is displayed on the instrument panel if you try to open the main menu.

The main menu allows you to programme certain vehicle and instrument panel screen functions:



"Choice of units" menu

This allows you to choose metric or imperial units.

"Choice of language" menu

This allows you to choose the display and voice recognition language.

"Vehicle parameters" menu

This allows you to access the settings for certain functions, grouped by category:

- Access to the vehicle.
- Lighting.
- Driving aid.

"Access to the vehicle"

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- ☞ Activate/deactivate the driver's welcome lighting function.
- ☞ Select unlocking of all the doors or just the driver's door.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate automatic operation of the electric parking brake.

"Lighting"

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- ☞ Activate/deactivate the lighting of the daytime running lamps*.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate the guide-me-home lighting and adjust its duration.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate the dual-function Xenon directional headlamps.

"Driving aid"

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- ☞ Activate/deactivate the operation of the rear wiper when in reverse gear.

* Depending on country of sale.

Trip computer

System which provides current information concerning your journey (range, consumption, etc.)



Information displays

The trip computer is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

- ☞ Turn the left-hand thumb wheel **A** on the steering wheel to display the various trip computer tabs in succession:
 - the current information tab is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel screen, with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the digital speed reading or the Stop & Start time counter.
 - the trip "1" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the average speed,
 for the first trip.
 - the trip "2" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel screen, with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the average speed,
 for the second trip.

Trip zero reset



- ☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.
- Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures and trip "2" for monthly figures.

Trip computer, a few definitions



Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

i If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

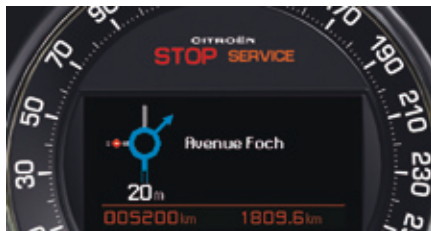
If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Return to the main instrument panel screen display

Successive rotations of the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel allow you to return to the main instrument panel screen display (vehicle speed), via the navigation information screen, then the screen displaying only the total mileage and the trip mileage (bottom of screen).

Display of navigation information on instrument panel screen



You can display navigation information in the instrument panel screen by rotating the left-hand thumb wheel on the steering wheel.

Check function



This function allows you to display the log of alerts.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The following messages appear consecutively on the instrument panel screen:

- Reminder of the state of the tyre pressures.
- Service indicator reminder.
- Display of message alerts.
- Oil level check.

Indicators

Service indicator

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.

More than 2 000 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears on the instrument panel central screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 2 000 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 900 miles remain before the next service is due.

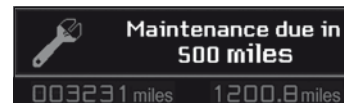
For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



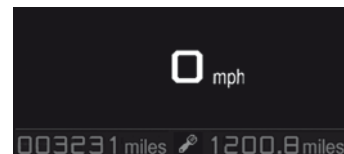
Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 500 miles remain before the next service is due.

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



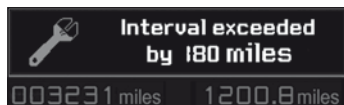
The spanner remains on in the screen to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



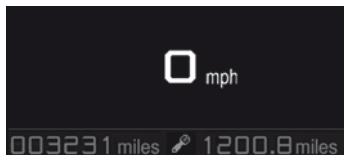
Service overdue

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles. For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the central screen indicates:



The spanner remains on in the screen to indicate that a service should have been carried out.



i The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving routine. Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

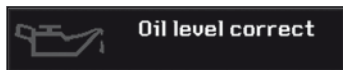
- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

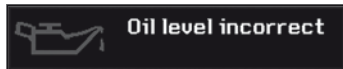
Engine oil level indicator*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information. The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

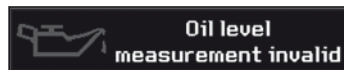


Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine. Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored. If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet. Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

* Depending on version.

Engine oil temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1.
In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2.
In this event, slow down, and if necessary, stop the engine and check the levels (see corresponding section).

Coolant temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1.
In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2, the engine coolant temperature warning lamp **A** and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, **stop as soon as it is safe to do so**. Switch off the ignition. **The cooling fan may continue to operate for a certain time.**
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the **SERVICE** warning lamp comes on, check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Fuel gauge



On horizontal ground, illumination of the fuel low warning lamp indicates that you are at the reserve level.
An alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When traveling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.

- With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.

Operation



- Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction or fault (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information for the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings






The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.





Warning lamps






When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction or fault which requires action on the part of the driver.


The illumination of a warning lamp is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the fault. If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

| Warning/indicator lamp | | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|------------------------|----------------|--|---|---|
| STOP | STOP | fixed, associated with another warning lamp. | It is associated with a punctured tyre or the engine coolant temperature. | Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
| | Service | temporarily. | A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp. | Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the closing of the doors, boot, rear screen or bonnet, - the remote control battery, - the tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel). For any other faults, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
| | | fixed. | A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp. | Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |

| Warning/indicator lamp | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|---|
|  +  | Braking | fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp. | The braking system fluid level is too low. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
| | | fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamp. | The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|  | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) | fixed. | The anti-lock braking system has a fault. The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. |
|  | Electric parking brake | flashing. | The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position P for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|  | Electric parking brake fault | fixed. | The electric parking brake has a fault. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section. |









| Warning/indicator lamp | | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|--|--|--|--|
|  | Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake | fixed. | The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty. | Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section. |
|  | Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR) | flashing. | The DSC/ASR regulation is operating. | The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory. |
| | | fixed. | The DSC/ASR system has a fault. | Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|  | Engine autodiagnosis system | fixed. | The emission control system has a fault. | The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay. |
| | | flashing. | The engine management system has a fault. | Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|  | Brake pad wear | fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. | The brake pads are at an advanced state of wear. | Have the brake pads replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |





| Warning/indicator lamp | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|--|---|---|
|  Low fuel level | fixed. | When it first comes on there remains approximately 5 litres of fuel in the tank. | <p>You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.</p> <p>This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made.</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity: 71 litres.</p> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p> |
|  Maximum coolant temperature | fixed red. | The temperature of the cooling system is too high. | <p>Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.</p> <p>Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary.</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.</p> |
|  Battery charge | fixed. | The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...). | <p>The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.</p> <p>If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p> |
|  Seat belt not fastened / unfastened | fixed. | The driver and/or the front/ rear passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt. | <p>Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.</p> |
| +  Seat belts not fastened / unfastened | fixed, associated with the seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp. | | <p>The illuminated dots represent the not fastened / unfastened passengers.</p> <p>They come on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - fixed for 30 about seconds on starting the vehicle, - fixed from 0 to 12 mph (0 to 20 km/h) when driving, - flashing above 12 mph (20 km/h), accompanied by an audible signal for about 120 seconds. |

| Warning/indicator lamp | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|--|------------------------|---|---|
|  + SERVICE | Under-inflation | fixed. | Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. |
| | | flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp. | Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |

Operation indicator lamps


If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation. It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

| Warning/indicator lamp | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|-------------------------------|--|--|
|  Left-hand direction indicator | flashing with buzzer. | The lighting stalk is pushed down. | |
|  Right-hand direction indicator | flashing with buzzer. | The lighting stalk is pushed up. | |
|  Hazard warning lamps | flashing with audible signal. | The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated. | The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously. |
|  Sidelamps | fixed. | The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position. | |
|  Dipped beam headlamps | fixed. | The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position. | |
|  Main beam headlamps | fixed. | The lighting stalk is pulled towards you. | Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps. |
|  Front foglamps | fixed. | The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk. | Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps. |
|  Rear foglamps | fixed. | The rear foglamps are on. | Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps. |

| Warning/indicator lamp | | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--|---|
|  | Diesel engine pre-heating | fixed. | The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on). | Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions. |
| | | flashing. | The parking brake is not fully applied or is released. | Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section. |
|  | Parking brake | fixed. | The parking brake is applied or not properly released. | Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section. |
| | | flashing. | The parking brake is not fully applied or is released. | Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section. |
|  | Passenger's front airbag | fixed. | The control switch, located in the glove box, is in the "ON" position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat. | Turn the control switch to the "OFF" position to deactivate the front passenger's airbag. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is an airbag fault. |
|  | Stop & Start | fixed. | When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode. | The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off. |
| | | flashes for a few seconds, then goes off. | STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically. | For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section. |

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

| Warning/indicator lamp | is on | Cause | Action / Observations |
|---|--------|--|--|
|  Passenger's front airbag | fixed. | <p>The control, located in the glove box, is set to the OFF position.</p> <p>The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.</p> <p>You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags.</p> | <p>Set the control to the ON position to activate the passenger's front airbag.</p> <p>In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.</p> |

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



Displays according to context:

- time
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions
- alert messages,

Controls



- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
- B. Cancel the operation or return to the previous display
- C. Scroll through the screen menus
- Confirmation at the steering wheel
- D. Confirmation at the audio system control panel

Selection of the type of information displayed (Mode)

Successive presses on the end of the wiper stalk or on the **MODE** button on the audio equipment permit selection of the type of information presented in the multifunction screen (date or radio, CD, MP3 CD, CD changer).

! For safety reasons, it is recommended that the driver does not operate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the Main Menu of the multifunction screen. This menu gives you access to the following functions:

- audio functions,
- display configuration,
- telephone (Bluetooth hands-free kit).



"Audio functions menu"

With the Audio system switched on, once this menu is selected, you can activate or deactivate functions associated with using the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText), CD (intros can, random play, CD repeat) or MP3 player (USB port / auxiliary Jack socket).



For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Audio system section.



"Display configuration" menu

With this menu selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness-video,
- date and time,
- choice of units.

Adjusting the date time



- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **C** to select the "Date and time" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Select the screen configuration using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Select the date and the time settings, using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Press **C** to select the values you wish to modify. Confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio system.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**" on the screen.



"Bluetooth - Telephone - Audio" menu

With the Audio system switched on, once this menu is selected, you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free kit (pairing), view the different telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your calls (start a call, end a call, double call, secret mode...).

i For more information, refer to the Audio system section.

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Colour screen (with eMyWay)

Displays in the screen



Depending on the context, it displays:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- audio functions,
- telephone information and contacts,
- satellite navigation system information.
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the navigation system.

Controls



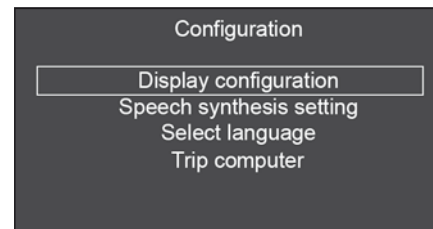
From the eMyWay control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated "**RADIO**", "**MUSIC**", "**NAV**", "**TRAFFIC**", "**SETUP**" or "**PHONE**" button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- ☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection, or
- ☞ press the "**Back**" button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.



For more information on these applications, refer to the "eMyWay" section.

"SETUP" menu



- ☞ Press the "**SETUP**" button to gain access to the configuration menu. It allows you to choose from the following functions:
 - "Display configuration",
 - "Speech synthesis setting",
 - "Select language",
 - "Trip computer".

Display configuration

This menu allows you to choose a colour scheme for the screen, adjust the brightness, set the date and time and choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit).

Date and time

- ☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button.
- ☞ Select "Display configuration" and press on **B** to confirm.
- ☞ Select "Adjust date and time" and press on **B** to confirm.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one using the directional arrows then confirm by pressing on **B**.

i Select "**Synchronise minutes with GPS**", so that the minutes are set automatically by satellite reception.

Speech synthesis setting

This menu allows you to set the volume for navigation instructions and to choose the type of voice (male or female).

Select language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the screen display from a defined list.

Trip computer

This menu allows you to view information on the state of the vehicle. You can choose from the following functions:

- "Alert log".
List of active alerts.
- "State of functions".
List of the state of functions (activated, deactivated or faulty).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must be only done when stationary.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to open the boot, locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unfolding / Folding the key



- First press this button to unfold / fold the key.

Unlocking the vehicle

Complete unlocking using the remote control



- Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

- Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and lighting of the courtesy lamp (if the function is activated).
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



- Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.
- Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by switching on of the courtesy lamp.

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action. The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the instrument panel screen configuration menu (see "Monitoring" section). Complete unlocking is activated by default.

i Selective unlocking is not possible using the key.

Boot

Manual boot



- Press this button for more than one second to unlock and release the boot.



Motorised boot



- Press this button for more than one second to unlock and trigger the automatic opening of the boot.



Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



- Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.
- Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.

Normal locking using the key

- Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear to lock the vehicle. Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by the courtesy lamp going off. According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

i If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place. When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock again automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened. When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the interior locking control indicator lamp. The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking

Using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Using the key

- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock to the rear of the vehicle to lock it and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear of the vehicle within five seconds to deadlock it.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.



Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the indicator lamp on the interior locking control.

If one of the doors or the boot is open or has not been closed correctly, the central locking will not work.

Locating your vehicle

- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by switching on of the interior lighting and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The vehicle remains locked.

Operating problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control fault, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**. (Refer to the "Starting-switching off the engine" section).
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds, until the operation requested is triggered.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.



Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a small screwdriver at the notch.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove flat battery from its housing.
- ☞ Place the new battery into its housing observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover into place.

i Lost keys

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it. Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Alarm*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

* According to country.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control. The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second. After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds. If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.

Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after closing the last door or the boot, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm when entering the vehicle, first press the remote control unlocking button.

* Depending on country of sale.

Electric windows



1. Driver's electric window control.
2. Passenger's electric window control.
3. Rear right electric window control.
4. Rear left electric window control.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
 - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
 - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
 - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

- i** If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:
- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
 - ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
 - ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control 5 to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

A message in the instrument panel screen informs you of the activation / deactivation of the control.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the "Child safety - Electric child lock" section).

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Doors

Opening

From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



- ☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only,
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Manual centralised control

2

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



Locking

- ☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button comes on. It flashes when the doors are locked while stationary with the engine off.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Automatic central locking

Unlocking

☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

- i** If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.
- ☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.



Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and the boot lock automatically. If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors and the boot temporarily.

Activation

☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds. A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds. A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.



Locking the front and rear passenger doors

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).
- ☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Boot (Saloon)

Opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever 1 and lift up the boot lid.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Emergency boot release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

Boot (Tourer)

Manual opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A** and lift up the tailgate.

Motorised opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A**, or press of more than one second on button **B** of the remote control.

i Do not attempt to help the opening of the tailgate manually after pressing the control **A**.

Manual closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior handle **C**.

Motorised closing

- ☞ Press the push-button **D** to close the tailgate.

i Do not interrupt the closing of the tailgate; if any obstacle prevents it closing, the operation will stop and the tailgate will automatically rise by a few centimetres.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/ unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (at a speed of less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Interrupting the opening / closing of the tailgate

When the tailgate is being opened or closed electrically, you can interrupt its movement at any point by pressing push-button **D**, the control **A** or button **B**.

You can then open or close the tailgate electrically or manually, if necessary moving it in the opposite direction to release it.

Memorisation of an intermediate position

You can store an opening angle for the tailgate:

- ☞ Manually or automatically move the tailgate to the required position.
- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a short audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**.

Cancelling the memorisation

With the tailgate in the intermediate position, you can cancel the stored position:

- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a long audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**. The tailgate will return to the fully open position at the next use.

Electrical protection of the motor

If the tailgate is repeatedly opened and closed in quick succession, the motor can start to overheat and then cut out, preventing opening and closing of the tailgate.

Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes without opening or closing the tailgate. Closing in manual back-up mode remains possible.

i To avoid risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the vicinity of the boot while opening and closing.
If the tailgate is carrying extra weight (snow, bicycle carrier, etc.) there is a risk of it closing under this load. Support the tailgate or first unload the bicycle carrier or clear the snow.
When using an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock the vehicle so as to avoid any risk of motorised opening of the tailgate.

Panoramic sunroof (Saloon)

Operation



Sunroof closed

- Press **B** to first notch: tilting.
- Press **B** to second notch: automatic complete tilting.
- Press **A** to first notch: sliding towards rear.
- Press **A** to second notch: automatic total sliding towards rear.

Sunroof open

- Press **B** to first notch: closure.
- Press **B** to second notch: automatic total closure.

Tilted sunroof

- Press **A** to first notch: closure.
- Press **A** to second notch: automatic total closure.



Your sun roof is fitted with a manually-operated blind.

Anti-pinch

An anti-pinch device stops the sun roof from closing, whether sliding or tilting. If it meets an obstacle, it re-opens.

Reinitialisation

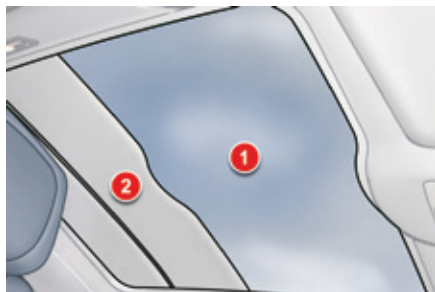
After a battery disconnection or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function.

- ☞ move control **B** until the roof is in the complete tilting position,
- ☞ keep control **B** pressed down for a minimum of 1 second.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

- i** Always remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle, even if for a short time.
- In the event of anything being caught by the sunroof closing, you must reverse the roof movement.
- Do this by reversing the position of the control switch.
- When the driver is operating the sunroof, they must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.
- The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof control correctly.
- Pay special attention to where children are when operating the sun roof.
- The fitting of a sunroof as an accessory is prohibited.

Panoramic sunroof (Tourer)



This comprises a tinted glass panoramic area **1** to improve brightness and vision in the passenger compartment. It is fitted with an electric blind **2** to help maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce noise.

Sequential electric blind



Opening

☞ Press control **A**.

Pressing to the **1st notch** allows you to open the blind step by step.

Pressing to the **2nd notch** allows you to fully open the blind.

The blind stops in the closest pre-defined position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Closing

☞ Press control **B**.

Press to the **first notch** to close the blind step by step.

Press to the **second notch** to close the blind completely.

The blind stops at the nearest pre-set position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Anti-pinch

If the blind meets an obstacle whilst closing, it stops and opens partially again.

You must re-initialise the anti-pinch function within 5 seconds of the blind stopping:

- ☞ press control **B** until the blind is fully closed (closing in steps of a few centimetres).

After a battery disconnection, or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

- ☞ press control **B** to the 2nd notch (fully closed),
- ☞ wait until the blind is fully closed,
- ☞ press control **B** for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens randomly during a closing operation, and straight after the blind stops:

- ☞ Press control **B** until the blind closes fully.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

i In the event of anything being caught when the blind is moving, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do so, reverse the position of the control.

When the driver is operating the blind, he or she must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

Front seats

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, seat back and head restraint which can all be adjusted for optimum driving comfort.

Manual adjustments

1. Adjustments to the height and angle of the head restraint

To raise it, pull upwards.

To lower it, press on the release button **A** and simultaneously on the head restraint itself. The adjustment is correct when the top edge of the head restraint is at the same height as the top of the head. It is also tilt adjustable.

To remove it, press the release button **A**, then pull it upwards. It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle.

2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Operate the control and adjust the position of the backrest to the front or to the rear.

3. Adjustment of the seat height

Raise or lower the control the number of times required to obtain the desired position.

4. Longitudinal adjustment of seat

Lift the control bar and adjust to the desired position.

5. Adjustment of lumbar support

Turn the control and adjust to the desired position.

6. Heated seat controls

The heated seats only operate when the engine is running.



i For your safety, do not drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Electric adjustments

To adjust the electric seats, switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into economy mode. Seat adjustments are also possible for a short period after opening one of the front doors or switching off the ignition.

1. Adjustment of the seat height and angle, and longitudinal position

Raise or lower the front of the control to adjust the seat cushion angle.

Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.

Slide the control forwards or backwards to move the seat forward or back.

2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.

3. Adjustment of the angle of the top of the backrest

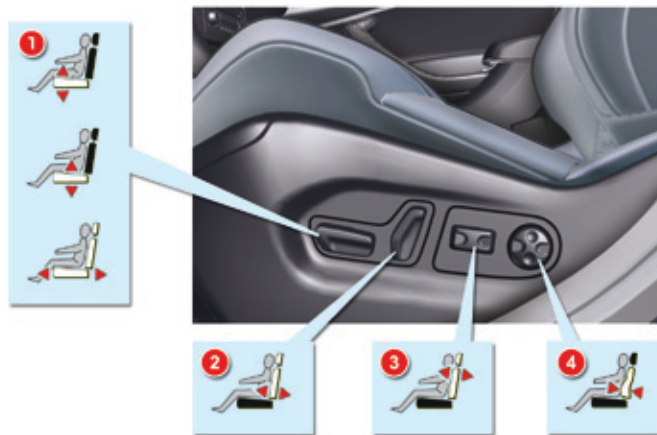
Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the top of the backrest.

4. Adjustment of lumbar support

This function allows you to independently adjust the height and level of lumbar support.

Move the control:

- Forwards or backwards to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar support zone.



! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Head restraint height and angle adjustments on electric seats



- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, push back or pull forward section **C** of the head restraint until you reach the desired position.
- ☞ To raise it, pull upwards.
- ☞ To lower it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself.
- ☞ To remove it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, then pull it upwards.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can operate separately.

- ☞ Use the corresponding adjustment dial, placed on the outer side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:



- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.

Massage function



This function provides the driver with a back massage. It only operates when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press on button **A**.
The warning lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in cycles of 6 minutes (4 minutes of massage followed by 2 minutes break). In total, the system will perform 10 cycles. After 1 hour, the function is deactivated. The warning lamp goes out.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing on button **A**.

Welcome function

The welcome function assists entry and leaving the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry to the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the seat moves forward to the memorised driving position.

When moving the seat, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

This function is deactivated by default. You may activate or deactivate this function using the "Main Menu" on the instrument panel screen.

To do so, select "Vehicle parameters/Comfort/Driver welcome".

Storing driving positions



System which stores the settings of the driver's seat. Up to two positions can be stored using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat. When storing a driving position, the air conditioning settings are also memorised.

i To adjust the air conditioning, refer to the "Air conditioning" section.

Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
An audible signal confirms that the settings have been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

i For your safety, avoid storing a driving position while driving.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
An audible signal indicates the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

Steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and reach to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.

Adjustment



i As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

- ☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.
- ☞ **When stationary**, lower the lever **A** to release the steering wheel adjustment.
- ☞ Adjust for height and reach.
- ☞ Raise the lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment.

After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glasses providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded.

Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- ☞ move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- ☞ move control **B** in all four directions to adjust,
- ☞ return control **A** to the central position.

i The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors is associated with that of the rear screen.

Folding

- ☞ from outside; lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Control **A** must be pulled again.

Unfolding

- ☞ from outside; unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the position is changed manually, a long press on control **A** re-engages the mirror. The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights from other vehicles...

i As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses. It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beam of following vehicles, the sun...

In order to guarantee optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.



In vehicles fitted with electrochromatic door mirrors, the system has an on/off button and an associated warning lamp.

On

- ☞ With the ignition on, press on button 1. The warning lamp 2 comes on and the mirror glass is in automatic mode.

Off

- ☞ Press on button 1. The warning lamp 2 goes off and the mirror glass remains in its lightest definition.

Rear seats

Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Removing the seat cushion



- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the front of the seat cushion 1.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion 1 fully against the front seat.
- ☞ Remove the seat cushion 1 from its fixings by pulling upwards.

Refitting the seat cushion

- ☞ Position the seat cushion 1 vertically in its fixings.
- ☞ Fold down the seat cushion 1.
- ☞ Press on the seat cushion to secure it.

3

Folding the seat



In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, always start with the seat cushion, **never with the seat backrest:**

- ☞ move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary,
- ☞ raise the front of the seat cushion 1,
- ☞ tilt the seat cushion 1 fully against the front seat,
- ☞ check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat backrest,
- ☞ lower or remove the head restraints if necessary,
- ☞ pull the control 3 forward to release the seat backrest 2,
- ☞ tilt the seat backrest 2.

The seat cushion 1 can be removed to increase the load volume.

Returning the seat backrest to its original position

When returning the rear seat to its original position:

- ☞ put the seat backrest 2 in the upright position and secure it,
- ☞ fold the seat cushion 1,
- ☞ refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

When returning the rear seat to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.



The red indicator on the control 3 should no longer be visible; if it is, push the seat fully back.

Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.

i Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Ventilation

A. Sunshine sensor.

B. Soft air diffusion grille.

The soft air diffusion grille located in the centre of the dashboard provides optimum distribution of the air for the front seats.

This system eliminates unpleasant air currents while maintaining an optimum temperature in the passenger compartment. To open the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel upwards.

To close the soft air diffusion grille, turn the wheel fully downwards.

In very hot weather, to obtain more satisfactory central and side ventilation, it is advisable to close the diffused air grille.

C. Cooled glove box.

D. Rear passenger vents.



i Heating, ventilation and air conditioning recommendations

Air conditioning

We recommend use of the automatic regulation of the air conditioning.

It permits automatic and optimised control of all of the following functions: air flow, temperature in the passenger compartment and air distribution, by means of various sensors (ambient temperature, sunshine). This eliminates any need for you to change your settings other than the temperature value displayed.

☞ Take care not to cover the sunshine sensor **A**.

If you select the automatic mode (by pressing the "AUTO" control) and leave all of the vents open, optimum comfort will be maintained and humidity and condensation will be removed regardless of the exterior climatic conditions.

The temperature in the passenger compartment can only be lower than the ambient temperature if the air conditioning is on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed. If the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a long period and the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment with the windows open for a few minutes, then close the windows.

To keep the air conditioning system in good working order it is essential that it is operated at least once a month.

The air conditioning uses engine power during its operation. As a result, the fuel consumption of the vehicle increases. In certain cases of particularly arduous use (e.g. towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures), switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and improves the towing capacity.

Air inlet

Check that the exterior grille for the air inlet, at the bottom of the windscreen, is clean and free of dead leaves, snow, etc.

When washing the vehicle using a high pressure nozzle, avoid spraying at the air inlet.

Air circulation

Maximum comfort is obtained by means of a good distribution of air in the passenger compartment, both in the front and in the rear. To obtain a uniform distribution of air, take care not to block the exterior air intake grille located at the base of the windscreen, the vents, the air outlets under the front seats and the air extractor located behind the flaps in the boot.

The front and rear vents are fitted with thumbwheels to adjust the air flow and direction. We recommend that you leave all of the vents open.

Dust filter / Odour filter (active carbon)

There is a filter for excluding odours and dust.

This filter must be changed in line with the vehicle's servicing schedule. (Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide).

Digital air conditioning (mono-zone)

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

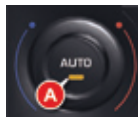
Mono-zone: this is the overall regulation of the temperature, distribution and flow of air in the passenger compartment.

The symbols and messages associated with the digital air conditioning controls appear in the multifunction screen.



1. Automatic operation
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning
5. Air flow adjustment
6. Front demisting - defrosting
7. Rear demisting - defrosting
8. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air
9. Screen

1. Automatic operation



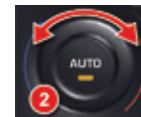
This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed illumination of indicator lamp **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air intake.
- Air conditioning.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open. Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of control **2**, switches the system to manual mode.

Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

2. Temperature adjustment



Turn control **2** to change the temperature:

- Clockwise to increase the temperature.

- Anticlockwise to reduce the temperature. The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated in the screen corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the screen configuration.

A setting around the **value 21** usually provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed to obtain rapidly the level of comfort required. The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Control via the manual controls

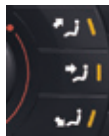
It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually, while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

- ☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of that which regulates the temperature **2**. Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and may not provide optimum comfort.

To return to automatic mode, press the **"AUTO"** control.

3. Air distribution adjustment



- ☞ Press the controls **3** to change the distribution of the air flow.

The indicator lamps corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous display of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

4. Air conditioning

The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active to obtain air conditioning.



- ☞ Press control **4**. Indicator lamp **B** comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

Deactivating the air conditioning may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

5. Air flow adjustment



- ☞ Turn control **5** to the right to increase the air flow or to the left to reduce it.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive illumination of the bars in the control panel screen **9**.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

Switching off the ventilation



- ☞ Turn control **5** to the left until the flow of air stops.

The **"OFF"** symbol is displayed in the multifunction screen.

This action switches off the screen and the indicator lamps.

It deactivates all of the system's functions, with the exception of the rear screen demisting.

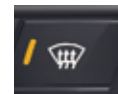
The temperature-related comfort is no longer controlled (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

Avoid driving for too long with the air conditioning off.

To reactivate the air conditioning:

- ☞ Press control **1**.

6. Front demisting - defrosting



In certain cases, the **"AUTO"** mode may not be sufficient to demist or defrost the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

- ☞ Press control **6** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator lamp comes on. The **"Demisting"** mode controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows.

Resuming manual control exits from **"Demisting"** mode. It must be cancelled to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Once the screen is clear, pressing control **1** returns the system to **"AUTO"** mode.

7. Rear demisting - defrosting

The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.



Press control **7**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the door mirrors. The indicator lamp comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current and in relation to the ambient temperature. It may be stopped by pressing control **7** again or when the engine is switched off.

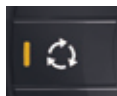
However, demisting resumes when the engine is switched on again.

Switch off the rear screen and door mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

8. Intake of exterior air / Recirculation of interior air

This function enables you to isolate the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours.



Press control **8** to set the air intake mode, the indicator lamp comes on.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

i You can store the air conditioning settings. Refer to the "Storing driving positions" section.

i When starting with the engine cold, the flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air. When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible. The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary. In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

Digital air conditioning (dual-zone)

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

Dual-zone: this is the independent regulation of the temperature and air distribution on the driver's side and the front passenger's side.

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature and the distribution of the air to suit their requirements.

The symbols and messages associated with the digital air conditioning controls appear in the multifunction screen.



- 1a. Automatic operation on the driver's side
- 1b. Automatic operation on the passenger's side
- 2a. Temperature adjustment on the driver's side
- 2b. Temperature adjustment on the passenger's side
- 3a. Air distribution adjustment on the driver's side
- 3b. Air distribution adjustment on the passenger's side

- 4a. Driver's zone screen
- 4b. Passenger's zone screen
- 5. Air flow adjustment
- 6. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning
- 7. Air recirculation – intake of exterior air
- 8. Rear demisting – defrosting
- 9. Front demisting – defrosting

1a-1b. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed by illumination of indicator lamp **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air conditioning.
- Automatic air recirculation.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open. Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**, switches the system to manual mode. Indicator lamp **A** goes off.

2a-2b. Temperature adjustment



- ☞ Turn control **2a** to change the temperature on the driver's side and control **2b** to change the temperature on the passenger's side: to the right to increase the temperature or to the left to reduce it.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the screen configuration.

A setting around the **value 21** usually provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly obtain the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Control via the manual controls

- ☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of temperature regulation **2a** and **2b**. The indicator lamps **A** in the "AUTO" controls go off.

It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and may not provide optimum comfort.

To return to "AUTO" mode, press controls **1a** and **1b**. The indicator lamps **A** come on.

3a-3b. Air distribution adjustment



- ☞ Press control **3a** to change the distribution of the air flow on the driver's side.

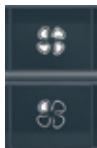
- ☞ Press control **3b** to change the distribution of the air flow on the passenger's side.

The indicator lamps corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous display of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

5. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press the control:

- to increase the air flow,
- to reduce the air flow.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive lighting of the fan blade indicator lamps.

Reducing the flow to minimum switches the air conditioning OFF.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

6. Air conditioning



The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active in order to obtain air conditioning.

☞ Press control **6**. The indicator lamp comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

7. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air



Automatic air intake mode

It is activated by default in automatic comfort regulation.

Automatic mode is activated with reverse gear or operation of the screenwash.



This function permits recirculation of the air and isolation the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours. It is inactive when the ambient temperature is below +5 °C to avoid the risk of misting inside the vehicle.

Closing the air intake

☞ Press control **7** to close the exterior air intake.



3

While retaining the other settings, this position allows the driver to isolate the passenger compartment at any time from unpleasant exterior odours and fumes.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Intake of exterior air

☞ Press control **7** once to open the exterior air intake.



i You can store the air conditioning settings. Refer to the "Storing driving positions" section.

8. Rear demisting - defrosting



The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.

- Press control **8**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the mirrors. The indicator lamp comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to avoid excessive consumption of current and depending on the exterior temperature.

It may be stopped by pressing control **8** again or when the engine is switched off.

In this latter case, the demisting resumes if the engine is switched on again within one minute.

Switch off the rear screen and exterior mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

9. Front demisting - defrosting



In certain cases, the "AUTO" mode may not be sufficient to demist or defrost the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

- Press control **9** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator lamp comes on. This system controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows. Resuming manual control exits from the "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting. Pressing one of the controls **1a** and **1b** returns the system to the "AUTO" mode.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

i When starting with the engine cold, air flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air. When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible. The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary. In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

Programmable heating

The programmable heating operates independently of the engine.

When the engine is off, it pre-heats the coolant circuit in order to benefit from an optimum engine operating temperature from the time the engine is switched on.

The programmable heating system is switched on using the long range remote control.

Activation can be immediate or deferred by means of a programming function.

If a malfunction of the programmable heating system occurs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

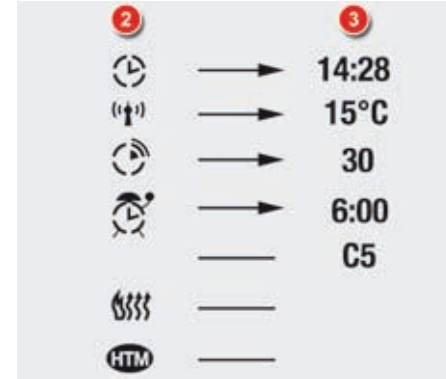
Programming remote control



The heating system programming remote control consists of the following buttons and displays:

1. Scrolling functions menu buttons.
2. Function indicators: clock, temperature, operating time, programmed time, heater operation, heating management symbols.
3. Digital displays: time, temperature, duration of operation, programmed time or level of heating.
4. Off button.
5. On button.

Displays on the remote control screen



3

Displaying the functions



Press the buttons **1** in succession to display the functions.

The first press of the left-hand or right-hand button displays the time.

Next, the left-hand button permits access to the programming time then to the level of heating (C1 to C5).

The right-hand button permits access to the passenger compartment temperature then to the duration of operation of the heater if it is to be switched on immediately.

i The passenger compartment temperature information is only available when the engine is off.

Setting the time



Once the time has been displayed, by means of the buttons **1**, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol flashes.

Set the time using the buttons **1**.
Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save it.



This symbol is displayed (fixed).

Immediate activation



Press button **5** (ON) until the message **"OK"** appears. When the signal has been received, the message **"OK"** is displayed along with the duration of operation.



The heater starts and this symbol is displayed.

To deactivate the function, press button **4** (OFF) until the message **"OK"** appears.



This symbol is switched off.

i When carrying out these operations, if the message **"FAIL"** appears, the signal has not been received. Repeat the procedure after changing your location.

Setting the duration of operation



Press the buttons **1** to display the duration of operation.



This symbol is displayed.

Once the duration of operation has been displayed, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol flashes.

Set the duration by pressing the buttons **1** (adjustment in steps of 10 mins and max value 30 mins).

Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save the duration of operation.



This symbol is displayed (fixed).



The factory setting value is 30 minutes.

Programming the heating

You must programme your departure time in order for the system to calculate the optimum heater start time automatically.



Programming the departure time

Press the buttons 1 to display the programming time.



This symbol is displayed.

Once the programming time has been displayed, press buttons 4 and 5 simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol flashes.

Set the time by pressing the buttons 1 and press buttons 4 and 5 simultaneously to save it.



This symbol is displayed (fixed).

Activation - deactivation

Once the programming time has been displayed by means of the buttons 1, press button 5 (ON) until the message "OK" appears.



When the signal has been received, the message "OK" is displayed along with the symbol "HTM".



This symbol is displayed when the heater starts.



HTM: Heat Thermo Management.

To deactivate the programming, press button 4 (OFF) until the message "OK" appears.



The symbol "HTM" is switched off.



When carrying out these operations, if the message "FAIL" appears, the signal has not been received. Repeat the procedure after changing your location.

Switching off the heating

Press button **5** (ON).



The symbol "**HTM**" remains on.

Changing the level of heating

The system offers **5 levels** of heating (from the lowest level **C1** to the highest level **C5**).

Once the level of heating has been displayed by means of the buttons **1**, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously.

The letter "**C**" flashes.

Set the level of heating by pressing the buttons **1**.

Press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously to save the level selected. The letter "**C**" is displayed (fixed).



The factory pre-sets are replaced by the new settings entered. The programmed times are stored until the next time they are changed.

When the departure time is activated, the level of heating cannot be changed. The departure time must be deactivated first.

Changing the battery

The remote control is supplied by a 6V-28L battery, which is supplied.

Information on the display indicates when it is time to replace this battery.

Unclip the casing then replace the battery.

The remote control must then be reinitialised, see below.



Do not discard the used batteries, take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected or the remote control's battery is replaced, the remote control must be reinitialised.

After switching on the power, press button **4** (OFF) for 1 second within the next 5 seconds.

If the operation has taken place correctly the message **"OK"** is displayed on the remote control screen.

If a problem occurs, the message **"FAIL"** appears. Repeat the operation.

i An adaptation of your programmable heating allows you to pre-heat your vehicle's passenger compartment. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



i The interior volumetric protection alarm movement sensor may be disturbed by the flow of air from the programmable heating when it is in operation. To avoid any unexpected triggering of the alarm during use of the programmable heating, it is advisable to deactivate the interior volumetric protection.



Always switch off the programmable heating while filling with fuel to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid any risk of poisoning and asphyxiation, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in an enclosed space such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

Do not park the vehicle on an inflammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper...), there is a risk of fire. The programmable heating system is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that the quantity of fuel remaining is sufficient. If the fuel tank is at the reserve, we strongly advise that you do not programme the heating.

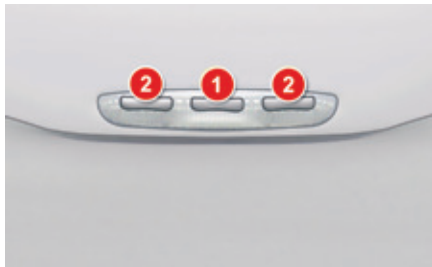
Courtesy lamps

Front courtesy lamp



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

Rear courtesy lamp



1. Rear courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Lighting off.



Lighting on.



- In lighting on mode, different lighting times are available:
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
 - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
 - with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Panoramic sunroof rear reading lamps (Tourer)



With the key in position or with the ignition on:

- ☞ Press the corresponding switch 1.
The reading lamp concerned comes on for ten minutes.

The rear reading lamps come on:

- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the vehicle is unlocked.

They switch off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on.

Interior mood lighting

Your vehicle is equipped with interior mood lighting for the centre console and the door handles.



Central console

The lamps are located on the roof console, near the front interior lamp. They illuminate the central console.

Operation

These lamps are activated with the automatic illumination of headlamps, when the ambient light is poor. They are deactivated when the instrument panel is off.

The intensity of the lighting varies along with that of the instrument panel.

- Press buttons **A** to increase or reduce the intensity of the lighting.

Lighting for door opening controls



This is located on the front and rear interior door opening controls.

The rear door opening controls lighting is deactivated if the child lock is on.

Welcome lighting

The welcome lighting is made up of:

- The interior (roof) lamps.
- The floor lighting.
- The pavement lighting when a door is open.

Floor lighting



In the front of the vehicle, when a door is opened, this illuminates the interior of the vehicle.

Pavement lighting



With the door open, this illuminates the ground next to the vehicle.

Interior fittings

Sun visor



☞ With the ignition on, lift the flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. To prevent dazzle from ahead, fold the visor downwards. It can be disengaged from its central fixing and pivoted over to the side windows if required.

Cooled glove box



☞ To open the glove box, pull the handle and lower the lid.

The glove box has a manually closable air conditioning vent **B**.

It has automatic illumination.



Whilst driving, the glove box should be kept closed.

Mats



Equipment available for the driver and front passenger.

Removing

- ☞ Slide the seat back as far as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the fixings, then the mat.

Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly,
- ☞ clip the fixings,
- ☞ check that the mat is held in place correctly.

- i** To avoid any interference with the pedals:
- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle. The use of these fixings is essential,
 - never fit more than 1 mat.
- The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.
- Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.



Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.



Cup holder / USB port and/or auxiliary JACK socket*

The front armrest includes a cup holder and a USB port and/or auxiliary JACK socket.

The USB port allows connection of a portable device, sending the audio files to your audio system so that they can be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

- ☞ Lift the armrest to access the cup holder or the USB port and/or auxiliary JACK socket.



Driver's oddments tray

- ☞ Pull the handle towards you.

* Depending on equipment.

Rear armrest

Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.



Cup-holder

The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

Storage

- ☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

12 V accessory socket



This is located in the rear ashtray.
Max power: 100 W.

3

Ski flap



A flap in the backrest, located to the rear of the armrest, facilitates the carrying of long objects.

To open

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle down.
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

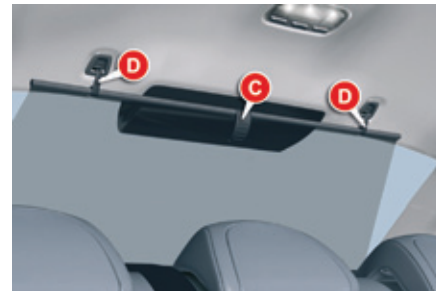
i Ensure that the objects are well secured and that they do not impede the operation of the gear lever.

Side blinds



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and position the blind on the hook **B**.

Rear blind (Saloon)



- ☞ Pull on the tab **C** to unreel the blind,
- ☞ position the blind on the hooks **D**.

Boot fittings (Saloon)



1. Boot floor (spare wheel storage).



- 2. Boot lamp.
- 3. Location for 6 CD changer.

Luggage securing rings

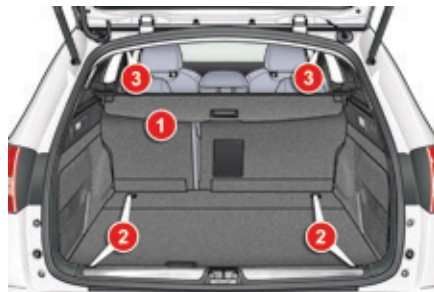
☞ Use the 4 securing rings on the boot floor to secure your luggage.
For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forward in the boot as possible.

3

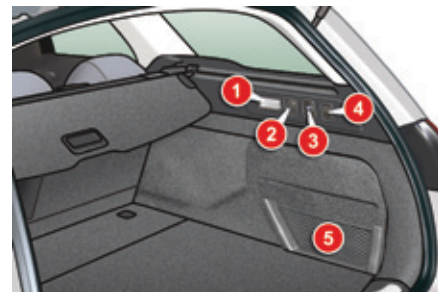
Boot fittings (Tourer)



- 1. Hook**
For shopping bags.
- 2. Torch**
To recharge, return it to its storage position.
- 3. Storage net**



- 1. Luggage-cover blind**
(see details on following page)
- 2. Luggage securing rings**
Use the 4 stowing rings provided on the boot floor to secure your loads.
For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards as possible.
- 3. Hooks**
These allow a cargo net to be fitted (see details on following page).



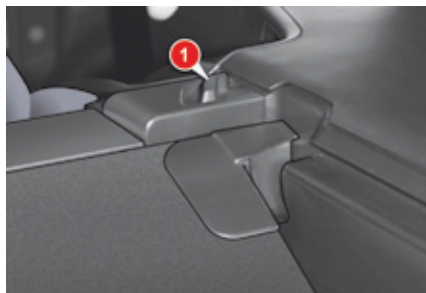
- 1. Boot lamp**
- 2. 12 V accessories socket (100 W maximum)**
Cigarette lighter type 12 volt socket. It is located on the rear right-hand trim.
- 3. Loading height control**
You can change the height of the vehicle to make loading or unloading easier.
- 4. Hook**
For shopping bags.
- 5. Storage net or closed housing**
Location for the 6 CD changer.

Luggage cover (Tourer)



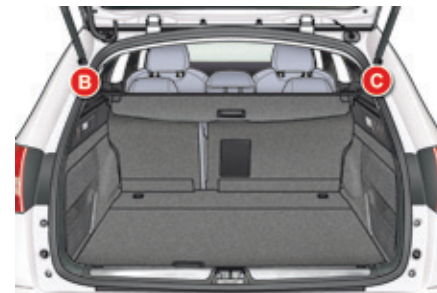
To reel in

- ☞ Press the handle (PRESS) gently. The luggage cover reels in automatically. The moving part **A** can be folded along the rear bench seat backrest.



To remove

- ☞ Compress the control **1** and lift the luggage cover on the right then on the left to remove it.



3

To install

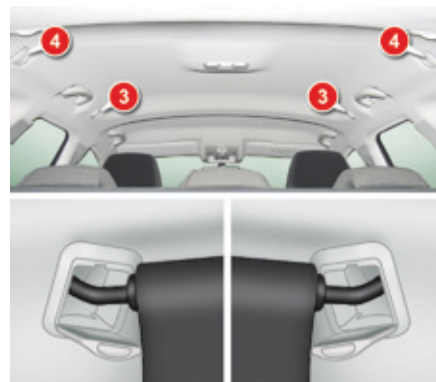
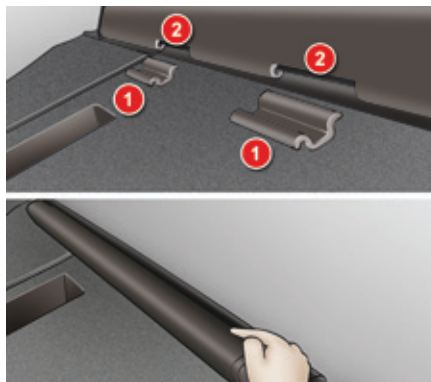
- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the luggage cover roller in its location **B** behind the rear bench seat.
- ☞ Compress the roller control **1** and put the roller in place in its location **C** on the right.
- ☞ Release the control to secure the luggage cover.
- ☞ Unreel it to its fastening on the rear pillar.

High load retaining net (Tourer)

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



Installation

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ position the high load retaining net roller above the two rails 1 located behind the rear seats (2/3 bench seat). The two notches 2 must be placed above the two rails,
- ☞ slide the two rails 1 into the notches 2 and push the roller (lengthways) from right to left to secure it,
- ☞ reposition the rear seat backs.



Row 1

To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers **3** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net and position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover **3**,
- ☞ pull the high load retaining net's metal bar to position the other hook in the second fixing cover.



Row 2

To use it in row 2:

- ☞ open the covers **4** of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ from the rear bench seat, unroll the high load retaining net, pushing it to detach it from the retaining hooks,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover,
- ☞ position the other hook in the second fixing cover and pull the metal bar towards you.

Exterior lighting controls

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

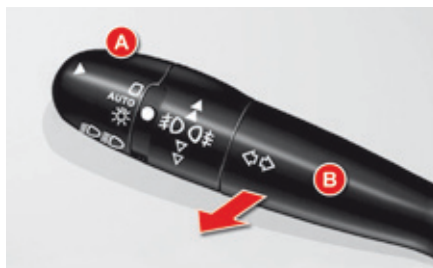
Settings

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting,
- guide-me-home lighting.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Manual controls



The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

- A.** Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.



Lamps off.



Automatic illumination of headlamps.



Sidelamps.



Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

- B.** Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

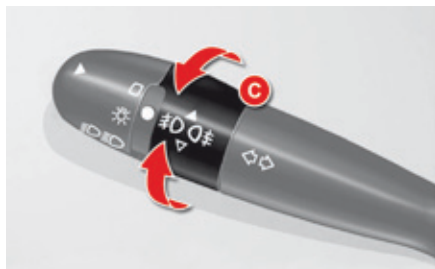
Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

- C.** Foglamps selection ring.

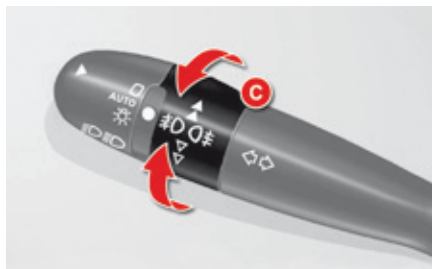
The foglamps operate with the sidelamps and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Model with rear foglamps only



- 1st turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.

Model with front and rear foglamps



- 1st turn forwards: front foglamps on.
- 2nd turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.
- 2nd turn rearwards: front foglamps off.

i In good or rainy weather, both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer needed.

i Lighting left on

When a front door is opened with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode, an audible signal warns the driver if the vehicle's lighting is still on.

In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

With the ignition off, if the dipped headlamps remain on, they will switch off automatically after thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

Daytime-running lamps

System which switches on special lamps at the front, to make the vehicle more visible by day. They light up automatically and permanently, when the engine is running, if:

- The function is activated* in the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.
- The lighting control is at position **0** or **AUTO**.
- All the headlamps are off.

You can deactivate* this function using the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

* According to country.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Linked with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

The link with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the duration of lighting for 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the instrument panel screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer operate.

Manual headlamp adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 5 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 5 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

i Initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of directional headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, depending on the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

i Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Travelling abroad

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, we recommend that you contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to check whether the headlamps need to be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.

Directional lighting

"Cornering lighting" function

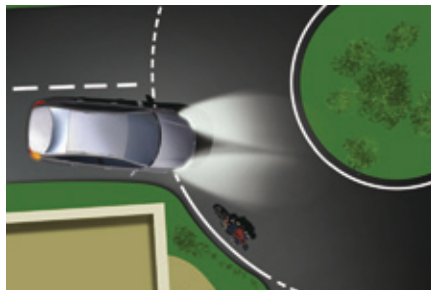
With dipped or main beams, this function provides additional lighting for the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approx 40 km/h).

This lighting is most useful when travelling at low and medium speed (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).

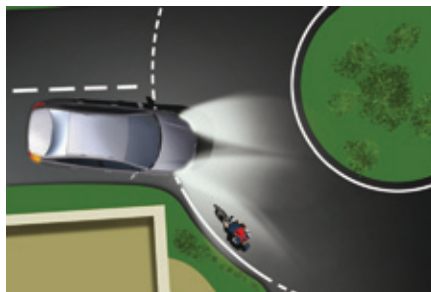
Activation

This function is activated:

- when the direction indicator is activated,
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.



without cornering lighting



with cornering lighting

Deactivation

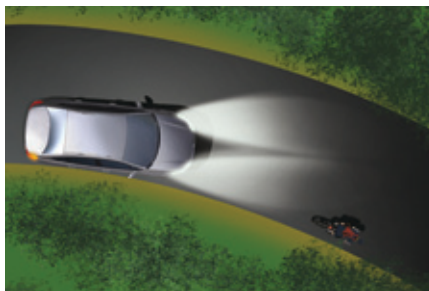
This function is deactivated:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- when stationary or at very low speed,
- when reverse gear is engaged,
- when the directional headlamps are switched off.

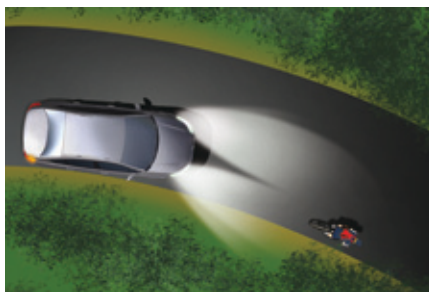
Directional headlamps function

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, associated with the "cornering lighting" function, enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, linked with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



without directional lighting



with directional lighting

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel screen "Main Menu". To do this, select "Vehicle parameters \ Lighting \ Directional headlamps".

Operating fault



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Wiper controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

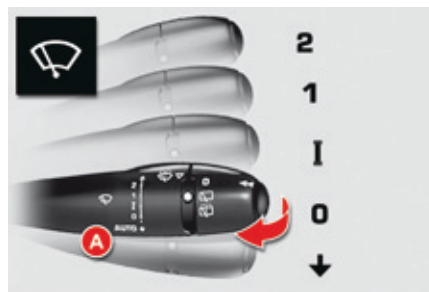
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls



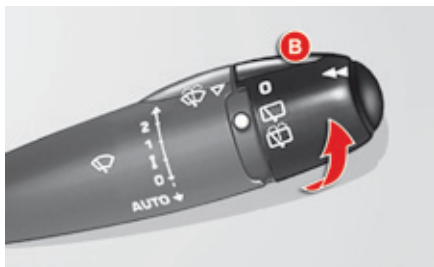
The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 2 | Fast (heavy rain). |
| 1 | Normal (moderate rain). |
| I | Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle). |
| 0 | Off. |
| ↓ | Single wipe (press down and release). |
| | or |
| AUTO ↓ | Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section). |

Rear wiper (Tourer)



i If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.

B. rear wiper selection ring:



park,



intermittent wipe,



wash-wipe (set duration).


Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper operates if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

 Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** to the "**AUTO**" position. It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards and returning it to position "**0**".

It is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

- i** The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
 - clean them regularly using soapy water,
 - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

A few driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations at all times and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Starting-switching off the engine

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

i Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged.

Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

4

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- ☞ depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),
or
- ☞ press the brake pedal firmly (electronic or automatic gearbox),
- ☞ insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- ☞ unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

i In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death.
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position 1.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

i For more information, refer to the "Practical information" section, under "Energy economy mode".

i Key left in the "Ignition on" position

On opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

i Do not flick the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition. This could cause serious damage to the turbocharger(s).

Manual parking brake

Mechanical device for immobilising the vehicle when stationary.



Application

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

To facilitate the action on the lever, you are recommended to press the brake pedal at the same time.



In all circumstances, as a precautionary measure, engage first gear.

On steep gradients, turn the steering wheel towards the pavement.

Release

- ☞ Press on the end of the lever whilst pulling it then lower it fully.



This warning lamp comes on if the parking brake is engaged or not fully released.

If the parking brake is released, the illumination of this warning lamp along with the **STOP** warning lamp indicates that the brake fluid level is low or a fault with the brake force distributor.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **AUTOMATIC**
Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default),
- **MANUAL**
Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible by pulling control lever **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic operation

Application with the engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- (P) - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- (!) - this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

The noise of operation will confirm to you the application/ release of your electric parking brake.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Application with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** the control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- (P) - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- (!) - this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

Release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox (first gear or reverse gear engaged)**, press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
-  - this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "Parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake. Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control.

Activation / Deactivation of the automatic functions

Depending on the country of sale, automatic application when switching off the engine and automatic release when moving off can be deactivated. The activation / deactivation is done in the instrument panel screen configuration menu. Select "Vehicle parameters / Comfort / Auto parking brake".



Deactivation of these functions is signalled by this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the parking brake must be applied and released manually.

! In some special circumstances, with the engine not running, (towing, icy conditions...) the automatic parking brake can be released manually, with the key in the running position.

i If the configuration menu does not have the option to activate / deactivate the automatic functions, this can be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual operation

Manual application / release of the parking brake is always possible.



Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** the control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** coming on,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel coming on,
- display of a message "Parking brake on" in the instrument panel screen.

! When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.

Release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, **push then release** control lever **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,
- this warning lamp in the instrument panel going off,
- display of a message "Parking brake released" in the instrument panel screen.

If you push control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the message "Foot on brake" will be displayed in the instrument panel.

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Max application of the parking brake" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the effective gradient you are parked on is variable (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).
- in the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Particular situations

In certain situations (starting the engine...), the parking brake can automatically alter its level of application. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing then releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp **P** in the control lever and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of a message "Parking brake off" in the instrument panel screen.

To ensure correct operation of the parking brake and therefore your safety, the number of successive application/release operations is limited to eight.

If this number is exceeded, you are warned by the message "Parking brake faulty" and a warning lamp flashes.



In the event of a battery failure, it will not be possible to operate the electric parking brake.

As a safety measure if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear or by placing a chock against one of the wheels.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) pull and hold control lever **A** to stop the vehicle. The dynamic stability control system (DSC) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the dynamic emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed in the instrument panel screen:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".



If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull - release" actions on control lever **A**.






The dynamic emergency braking should only be used in exceptional circumstances.










If it is not possible to immobilise the vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults

! If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

| | SITUATION | CONSEQUENCES |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Electric parking brake problem and display of message "Parking brake faulty" and the following warning lamps:</p>  | <p>If the electric parking brake problem warning lamp and the service warning lamp come on, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).</p> |
| 2 | <p>Display of the messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake is only available manually. |
| 3 | <p>Display of messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamp:</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Manual release of the electric parking brake is not available. - The hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and manual application are still available. |

| | SITUATION | CONSEQUENCES |
|---|---|--|
| 4 | <p>Display of messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamps:</p> <p> SERVICE</p> <p> and/or  flashing</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is not available. <p>To apply the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition ☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Application may take longer than in normal operation. - If warning lamp (!) flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. <p>To release the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds. |
| 5 | <p>Display of message "Parking brake control faulty – automatic mode activated" and the following warning lamps:</p> <p> and/or  flashing</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available. - Manual application/release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable. |
| 6 | <p>Display of message "Parking brake faulty" and of the following warning lamp: flashing</p> <p></p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Application of the parking brake is not guaranteed. - The parking brake is temporarily unavailable. <p>It this situation arises:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Wait approximately 3 minutes. ☞ After 3 minutes, if the warning lamp is still flashing, try to reinitialise the parking brake, either by pushing and releasing the control A while pressing the brake pedal or by means of a long pull on control lever A. |
| 7 | <p>Battery problem</p> <p></p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Illumination of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle. - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine. |

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in certain conditions on a gradient,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.



On a descending gradient, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.



Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually and ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (in the instrument panel) is on fixed (not flashing).

5-speed manual gearbox

Starting the vehicle



- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning lamp switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ At temperatures below 0°C, declutch while operating the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Move the gear lever to the right then back.

i Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

4

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear



- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

- i** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.
As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
 - always select neutral,
 - press the clutch pedal.

6-speed electronic gearbox system

Six-speed electronic gearbox system which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

There are two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential gear changing by the driver,

In automated mode, it remains possible to change gear manually by using the steering mounted control paddles, when overtaking, for example.

A **SPORT** programme is available in automated mode, providing a more dynamic driving style.

Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: gear lever in position **A**,
- ☞ manual mode: gear lever in position **M**,
- ☞ **SPORT** mode: gear lever in position **A** and a press on button 1.

Steering mounted control paddles



- + Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.
- ☞ Press the back of the "+" steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.
- Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.
- ☞ Press the back of the "-" steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

4

Displays in the instrument panel



The position of the gear lever and the driving mode are displayed in dial **C** of the instrument panel.

A selection grille alongside the gear lever also allows you to see the selected position.

Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, the gear lever must be in position **N**.
 - ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
 - ☞ Operate the starter.
- N** appears in the instrument panel screen.

- i** If the engine does not start:
- If **N** flashes in the instrument panel, move the gear lever to position **A** then to position **N**.
 - If the message "Foot on the brake" is displayed, press the brake pedal more firmly.

- ☞ Select first gear (position **M** or **A**) or reverse (position **R**).
- ☞ Release the parking brake unless it is programmed in automatic mode.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

Reverse

- ☞ With your foot on the brake, push the lever forwards.

R Only engage reverse with the vehicle immobilised.
To avoid any jerking, wait a moment before accelerating.

Neutral

N Never select position **N** with the vehicle moving.

Automatic operation



☞ Select position **A**.

The gearbox continuously selects the most suitable gear, depending on the:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road,
- vehicle loading.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Manual gear changing

This selective gear change mode enables you to overtake, for example, while still remaining in automatic mode.

☞ Operate the + or - steering mounted control paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Manual operation



☞ Select position **M**.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

The **SPORT** programme is inoperative with sequential operation.

4

i On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.
Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

SPORT programme



☞ With the gear lever at **A** and the engine running, press button **S** to activate the **SPORT** programme, which provides a more dynamic driving style.

S appears in the instrument panel.

☞ Press the **S** button again to switch it off. **S** then disappears from the instrument panel screen.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear lever in neutral **N**.
Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

With the ignition on, the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a fault with the gearbox.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You must press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Whatever the circumstances, you must manually apply the parking brake when parking, unless the parking brake is programmed in automatic mode.

Automatic gearbox



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are provided:

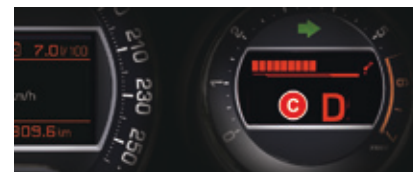
- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
- the **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: gear lever in position **D**,
- ☞ manual mode: gear lever in position **M**,
- ☞ **SPORT** mode: gear lever in position **D** and button **A** pressed,
- ☞ **SNOW** mode: gear lever in position **D** and button **B** pressed.

Displays in the instrument panel



The position of the gear lever and the driving mode are displayed in the instrument panel dial **C**.

A position grille associated with the gear lever allows you to view the selected position.



For safety:

- position **P** can be disengaged only if you press the brake pedal,
- when a door is opened, an audible signal is heard if the gear lever is not in position **P**,
- always make sure that the gear lever is in position **P** before you leave your vehicle.

If the gearbox is in position **P** but the position of the gear lever is different, reposition the gear lever on **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, the gear lever must be in position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Operate the starter.
- ☞ When the engine is running, place the gear lever on **R**, **D** or **M** as required.
- ☞ Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.
- ☞ To avoid a possible difference between the position of the gear lever and the actual position of the gearbox, always exit from position **P** with the ignition on and brake pedal applied.

Otherwise, when the ignition is on or the engine is running:

- ☞ reposition the gear lever in position **P**,
- ☞ put your foot on the brake pedal and then select the gear you want.

Park

P

This position of the gear lever is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- ☞ To select position **P**, move the gear lever back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- ☞ To exit position **P**, move the gear lever to the right and then to the position you want.
- ☞ Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the gear lever is correctly positioned.

Reverse gear

R

Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

Neutral

N

Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.



Never select positions **P** or **R** if the vehicle is not stationary. If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.

4

Automatic operation



- ☞ Move the gear lever to position **D**.
The gearbox constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following parameters:
 - driving style,
 - road profile
 - vehicle load.

The gearbox operates without requiring any intervention on your part.
For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal hard down past the point of resistance, which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not engage a higher gear.

Manual operation



Position of the gear lever for manual gear changing.

- ☞ Move the gear lever to position **M**.
- ☞ Push the gear lever towards the "+" sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the gear lever towards the "-" sign to change down a gear.
- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically to first gear.
- In sequential mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- The **SPORT** and **SNOW** modes do not operate in sequential mode.

SPORT and SNOW programmes



These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very particular conditions of use.

SPORT programme "S"

☞ With the gear lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **A**.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic driving style.



S appears in the instrument panel.

SNOW programme "❄"

☞ With the gear lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **B**.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme makes moving off easier and improves traction in conditions of poor grip.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to exit from the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.



A strong snatch may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear. In the event of a fault, the gearbox is blocked in one gear; do not exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h). Do not turn off the engine while the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**. Never press the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously. Braking and acceleration should be done with the right foot only. Pressing both pedals simultaneously may damage the gearbox. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If the ambient temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left running at idle for four minutes, in order to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system. This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Example:



- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow accompanied by the suggested gear.

i In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

- ECO** The "ECO" warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:
- **with an electronic gearbox**, at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.



If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

i For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

- ECO** The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts with an **electronic gearbox**:
- gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
 - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
 - or engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

ECO In this case the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system. This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

i If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the screen.

i The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

Maintenance

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from CITROËN dealers).
Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.

To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



! The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving. The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.

A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).

The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

! Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section). The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert



The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.



If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.

or



In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).



The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.

The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system. In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).



Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.



Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fixed centred controls steering wheel



| | | |
|----|--------------------------|--|
| | Rotate | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Scroll the various pages of information in the instrument panel screen. - Move through the various menus in the instrument panel screen. - Increase/decrease values. |
| 1 | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Open the menu in the instrument panel screen (only when stationary). - Select and confirm information. |
| | Long press | Trip computer zero reset (if the trip computer page is displayed). |
| 2 | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Cancel the current operation. - Return to the previous screen in the instrument panel screen. |
| | Long press | Return to the initial page in the instrument panel screen. |
| 3 | Short press | Increase the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / store the speed. |
| | Maintained press | Increase the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h). |
| 4 | Short press | Decrease the speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) / store the speed. |
| | Maintained press | Decrease the speed in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h). |
| 5 | Short press | Suspend or resume cruise control/speed limiter (depending on the mode selected). |
| 6 | Short press | Select cruise control or speed limiter mode (the cycle on this button will always begin with selection of the speed limiter). |
| 7 | Short press | Deactivate cruise control/speed limiter. |
| 8 | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Accept an incoming call. - End the current call. - Open the telephone short-cut menu. - Confirm in the list and the telephone menu. |
| | Long press | Reject an incoming call. |
| 9 | Short press / Long press | Horn. |
| 10 | Short press | Activate/deactivate Black Panel mode (night driving). |
| 11 | Short press | Activate the voice command. |
| | Long press | Navigation instruction repeat. |



| | | |
|----|--------------------------------|---|
| 12 | Rotation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Scroll the pre-set stations. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Scroll the CDs or directories. - In the multifunction screen menus: Move and increase/decrease. |
| | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - In the multifunction screen menus: confirm. - Open the short-cut menus (depending on the multifunction screen page). |
| | Long press | Open the multifunction screen main menu. |
| 13 | Short press | Cancel the current operation and return to the previous page in the multifunction screen. When an incoming telephone call is received: Reject the call. |
| | Long press | Return to the initial page in the multifunction screen. |
| 14 | Short press | Access to the multifunction screen main menu. |
| 15 | Short press / Maintained press | Volume increase. |
| 16 | Short press / Maintained press | Volume decrease. |
| 17 | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - First press: mute. - Second press: restore sound. |
| | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Automatic search of higher frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the next track. |
| 18 | Maintained press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Fast forward play. |
| | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Automatic search of lower frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the previous track. |
| 19 | Maintained press | CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Fast backwards. |
| | Short press | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: display the list of radio stations available. - CD/MP3 CD and CD changer source: display the list of CD tracks and directories. - Jukebox source: display the list of albums. |
| 20 | Long press | Update the list of radio stations. |
| | Short press / Long press | Horn. |
| 22 | Short press | MODE: select the type of information presented in the multifunction screen. |

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the limit speed is reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect. The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (approx. 30 km/h) must be programmed.

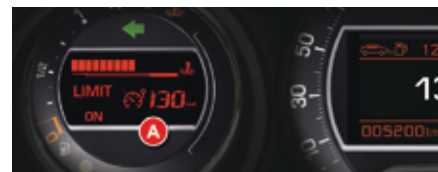
The speed limiter can in no circumstances replace keeping to speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



The speed limiter switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays in the instrument panel



The speed limiter information is displayed in zone A of the instrument panel.

Programming

- Press on button **4** to select speed limiter mode "**LIMIT**".

The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



When the function is selected, the last memorised speed and the information "**PAUSE**" are displayed.

With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing on:

- Button **1** to increase the memorised maximum speed.
- Button **2** to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Successive presses will modify the maximum speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Activation



- Press on button **3** when the desired maximum speed is displayed. The information "**ON**" then appears in zone **A**.

Suspension / Resumption



- Press on button **3**. This action causes the information "**PAUSE**" to appear in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

4

Overriding the programmed speed



The accelerator pedal has an end-of-travel switch. In order to exceed the memorised maximum speed at any time, you can press the pedal all the way down. While the speed is being exceeded, the speed displayed in zone **A** will flash. You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed, to restore the function.

The speed will also flash if the speed limiter is not able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed (e.g. on a steep descent or under excessive acceleration).

To reactivate the speed limiter, release the accelerator to slow to a speed lower than the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving

- ☞ Either press on button **5**.
- ☞ Or select the speed limiter function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** In the event of a steep descent or under excessive acceleration, the speed limiter (which does not act on the brakes) may not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. Use of a floor mat other than that recommended by CITROËN may affect the normal operation of the accelerator pedal and hamper the operation of the speed limiter. Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal. The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and you must be in at least:

- 4th gear for a manual gearbox,
- 2nd gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.

Steering mounted controls



The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in zone A of the instrument panel.

4

Programming

- ☞ Press button **4** to select cruise control mode "**CRUISE**".



The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel. When the function is selected, **no cruising speed has yet been memorised**.

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **1** or button **2**. The cruising speed is then memorised and cruise control is activated. The cruising speed is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel, and "**ON**" is displayed.



You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen. The vehicle speed may vary slightly from that memorised. If during cruise control the system cannot keep to the cruise speed (e.g. on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. If necessary, brake to curb your speed.

Adjustment of the memorised speed while cruise control is in operation

You can adjust the memorised speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing:

- Button **1** to increase the speed.
- Button **2** to reduce the speed.

Successive presses will modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Overriding the programmed speed

While cruise control is in operation, it is always possible to go above the programmed speed simply by pressing the accelerator pedal (for example to overtake another vehicle). The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes. You only have to release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

Suspension / Resumption

- ☞ Either by pressing the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.
- ☞ Or by pressing button **3**.
- ☞ Or by the DSC or ASR systems being active.

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, cruise control is deactivated if the gear lever is in neutral.



"PAUSE" will be displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

These actions do not cancel the cruising speed which remains displayed on the instrument panel.

Reactivation

- **By recalling the memorised speed**
After deactivation, press button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruising speed. The memorised speed and "**ON**" are displayed in zone **A**. If the memorised cruising speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate strongly to reach the current speed.
- **By selecting the current speed**
Press button **1** or **2** once the desired speed has been reached. The new speed and "**ON**" will appear in zone **A**.

Return to normal driving

- ☞ Either press on button **5**.
- ☞ Or select the cruise control function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

The speed that was chosen is no longer memorised.

Operating fault

If there is a fault, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the **SERVICE** warning lamp. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! Cruise control must only be used where the traffic conditions permit driving at a constant speed.
Do not use it on congested roads or when the weather or the road conditions are poor.
The driver must remain attentive and in complete control of the vehicle.
You are recommended to keep your feet within range of the pedals.

Lane departure warning system

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

i The lane departure warning system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. It is necessary to observe driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Activation

☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** The detection may be impeded:
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
 - if the markings on the ground are worn,
 - if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

Parking space sensor



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances necessary for your manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measuring are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement is terminated.
- **flashing:** measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can select the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A**. The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

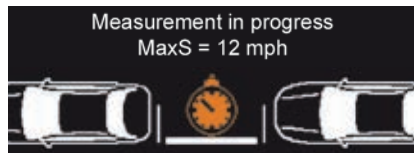
During the measurement, the message "Measurement in progress - Vmax 20 km/h (12 mph)" is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

Operation

You have identified a parking space:

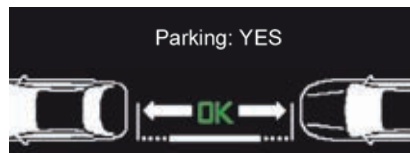
- ☞ Press button **A** to select the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During measurement, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

The system then measures the size of the space.

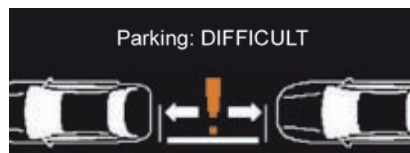


- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the instrument panel screen accompanied by an audible signal.
- ☞ Depending on the message issued by the system, you may or may not be able to perform the manoeuvre.

The function displays the following types of message:



Parking YES



Parking DIFFICULT



Parking NO

The function deselects itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measurement is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the function,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

The function remains available after each measurement and thus can measure more than one space during your search.

In bad weather conditions or in winter, make sure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.

The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking sensors during space measurement when you are in forward gear.

i If there is a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Visual and audible front and/or rear parking sensors

System consisting of proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located in front of or behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.



The parking sensors are **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and/or displaying of the vehicle in the multifunction screen.

The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a diagram in the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

i The parking sensors system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

4

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Reactivation



☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the speed of the vehicle is below about 6 mph (10 km/h), some sources of noise (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, ...) may trigger the audible parking sensor signals.

Reversing camera (Tourer)



A reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed in the navigation screen.

! This system is a driving aid that does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver, who must retain control of their vehicle at all times.



The space between the blue lines represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors.

i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a sponge and a soft cloth. When cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, keep the lance at least 30 cm from the lens of the camera.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.

The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

i The projected lines displayed in the screen do not allow the vehicle to be placed relative to tall obstacles (vehicles that are close for example). Deformation of the image is normal.

"Hydractive III +" electronic suspension



The suspension automatically and instantly adjusts to different driving styles and to the profile of the road, providing the best compromise between occupant comfort and vehicle road holding.

The system alternates between soft and firm suspension settings, maximising comfort at the same time as constantly ensuring the highest level of safety. It also automatically corrects ride height, according to the vehicle load and driving conditions.

In addition, the "Hydractive III +" system allows you to choose between two modes of suspension.

A change of suspension mode can be made either when the vehicle is moving or when stationary, by pressing button **A**.

Display in the instrument panel

The suspension mode selected is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

Normal mode



This mode favours soft damping for maximum comfort. If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal road position.

SPORT mode



This mode favours dynamic driving. The warning lamp on button **A** comes on in addition to the message in the instrument panel screen.

SPORT mode is retained when you switch off the engine.

Vehicle positions



Position changes may only be made when the engine is running.

The adjustable ground clearance meets all types of situation. Apart from a few specific situations, the vehicle should be in the Normal position.

☞ Press once on one of the adjustment controls.

The change in position is indicated by a message on the instrument panel screen.





High position

Changing a wheel (not possible if speed > 6 mph (10 km/h)).



Normal position

If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal position.



Mid-high position

For increased ground clearance (not possible if speed > 25 mph (40 km/h)).

For use on difficult roads when travelling at reduced speed, as well as on car park ramps.



Low position

To facilitate loading or unloading the vehicle. For workshop inspections.

Not to be used in normal driving (not possible if speed > 6mph (10 km/h)).

Request not granted



The instrument panel screen temporarily displays a message indicating that this position is not authorised. The vehicle remains in the authorised position and the instrument panel screen indicates this position to you.

Automatic variation of ground clearance

- If your speed exceeds 70 mph (approx. 110 km/h), on a good road surface, ground clearance is lowered. The vehicle returns to its normal position if the road surface deteriorates or if your speed is lower than 55 mph (approx. 90 km/h).
- At low or medium speed, if the road surface is poor, ground clearance is increased. The vehicle returns to its normal position as soon as conditions allow.
- On switching off the ignition, the ground clearance is reduced to the parking position

i For your safety if you are operating underneath the vehicle, you must support the vehicle with axle stands.

Direction indicators

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Hazard warning lamps

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.
- They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

i When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, it indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In both cases, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

i When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Trajectory control systems

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Your vehicle has a system to improve traction on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of low adhesion that might make moving off and progress difficult on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations the **intelligent traction control** system regulates the amount of wheel slip to optimise the traction and trajectory control of your vehicle.

For vehicles with Hydractive III + suspension, manual adjustment of ground clearance to the intermediate position improves further the ability to make progress in deep snow (see the relevant paragraph).

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces with low adhesion.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC and ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.



Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.



☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on. The DSC and ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine and on the brakes in the event of a involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

The systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually:



☞ Press this button again.

Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp and the lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! DSC/ASR

The DSC and ASR systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep the DSC and ASR systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of the DSC and ASR systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

! After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact. Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
- ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- ☞ The lap strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- ☞ The diagonal strap should be positioned across the chest and away from the neck.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.



Height adjustment

When correctly adjusted, the seat belt shoulder strap falls over the middle of the shoulder.

- ☞ To adjust the belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

Unfastening

- ☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.

The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

Rear seat belts



Each rear seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter.

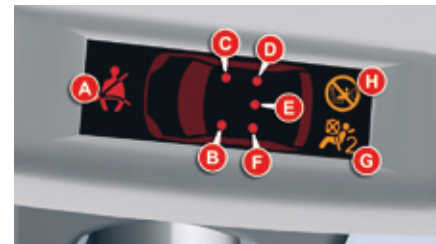
Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.

Seat belts and passenger's front airbag warning lamp display screen



This display screen is located in the roof console.

The seat belt fastened/unfastened status for each seating position is indicated by the lighting or flashing of the warning lamps linked to each position:

- A.** Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
- B.** Front left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- C.** Front right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- D.** Rear right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- E.** Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
- F.** Rear left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- G.** Front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp.
- H.** Passenger's front airbag activation warning lamp.

i The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully. The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder. The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide. Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage. Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres. Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person. Never allow a child to travel on your lap. For more information, refer to the "Child seats" section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on. Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards best protecting the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the deployment of airbag will not be triggered again.



Impact detection zones

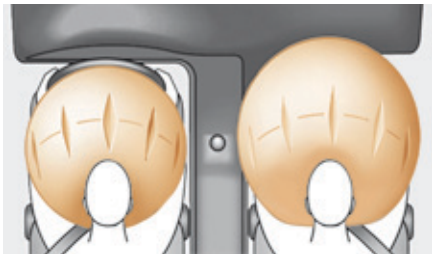
- A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The noise of the detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which contributes towards the protection of the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, drivers side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



Deactivation

Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch **1**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



This warning lamp comes on in the screen located in the roof console when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

i To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove a rearward facing child seat, turn switch **1** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault



If this symbol appears in the **instrument panel screen**, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

i If the symbol or warning lamp comes on continuously, do not install a child seat or an adult on the front passenger seat. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lateral airbags*

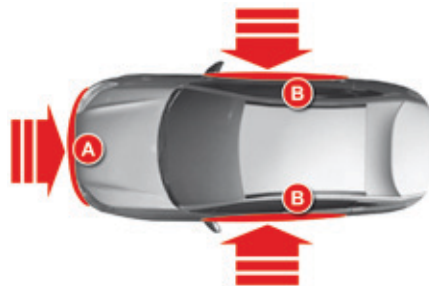
System which contributes towards the protection of the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front seat backrest frame, on the outer side.

Deployment

It is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

* According to country of sale.

Curtain airbags*

System which contributes towards the protection of the the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is fitted in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

i In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
No lateral airbag is deployed in the event of a rear or front collision.

Operating fault



If this symbol is displayed **in the instrument panel screen**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

* According to country of sale.

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags.

For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Refer to the "Accessories" section.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats**,
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

- i** **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
 - **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

7

i Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tightened. For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor.

Child seat in the front*

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened. The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

- i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF

This label is located on the middle door pillar, passenger side.



i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

| | |
|----|---|
| AR | لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الورااء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه. |
| BG | НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНАВАНЕ на детето. |
| CS | NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ. |
| DA | Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT. |
| DE | Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden. |
| EL | Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ |
| EN | NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur |
| ES | NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño. |
| ET | Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada. |
| FI | ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNYY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN. |
| FR | NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIF. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT |
| HR | NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta. |
| HU | SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÜLYÖS SÉRÜLÉSET okozhatja. |
| IT | NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino. |
| LT | NIEKADA neįrengkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgrežtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVės. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS. |
| LV | NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekli priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS. |

| | |
|----|---|
| MT | Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla |
| NL | Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN |
| NO | Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET. |
| PL | NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZŁOWIA PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA. |
| PT | NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA. |
| RO | Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retenere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA. |
| RU | ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ |
| SK | NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA. |
| SL | NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE. |
| SR | NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA. |
| SV | Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installerats på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT. |
| TR | KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir. |

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L4

"KLIPPAN Optima"

From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster is used on its own.



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installing child seats secured using the seat belt

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of universally approved child seats **(a)** using a seat belt, depending on the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

| | Seat position(s) | Weight and indicative age of child | | | |
|-------|---|--|---|--|---|
| | | Up to 13 kg (Groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to approx. 1 year | From 9 to 18 kg (Group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years | From 15 to 25 kg (Group 2) From approx. 3 to 6 years | From 22 to 36 kg (Group 3) From approx. 6 to 10 years |
| Row 1 | Front passenger (c) with height adjustment (e) | U (R) | U (R) | U (R) | U (R) |
| | Front passenger (c) without height adjustment (e) | U | U | U | U |
| Row 2 | Outer rear (d) | U | U | U | U |
| | Centre rear (d) (f) | U | U | U | U |

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shells and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c) Consult the current legislation for your country before driving with your child in this seat.
- (d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (e) When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, the passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed**. When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, the passenger airbag must remain active.
- (f) A child seat with a support leg must **never be installed on the centre rear seat**.
- U:** Seat position suitable for installation of universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing child seat.
- U (R):** As **U**, with the vehicle seat, which must be adjusted to the highest and intermediate longitudinal position.

i Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice on child seats

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack in relation to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, check that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle.

At the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a forward facing child seat.

For this, move the front seat forward and if necessary straighten its backrest.

For optimum installation of a forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, or in contact if possible. The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on the passenger seat. Ensure that the head restraint is stowed or attached securely so that it is not thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint as soon as the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country.

Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".

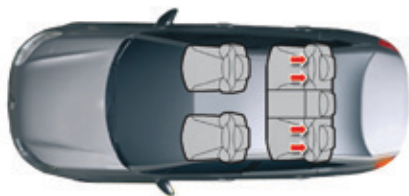
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

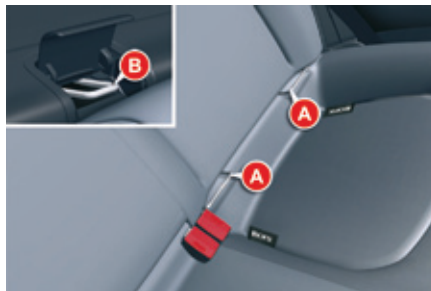
"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulations**.

The outer rear seats are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



Saloon



There are three rings for each outer rear seat:

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- an upper ring **B**, called the **TOP TETHER**, fixed to the rear shelf and located under a cover behind the head restraint behind the head restraint, for fixing the upper strap.

It is indicated by a marking.

Tourer



There are three rings for each outer rear seat:

- two lower rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- an upper ring **C**, called the **TOP TETHER**, fixed to the roof on the boot end and located under a cover, for fixing the upper strap.

It is indicated by a marking.

The TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This arrangement limits the forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**, following installation of the guides (supplied with the seat).

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B** or **C**.

To attach the child seat to the TOP TETHER:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the strap of the child seat centrally between the head restraint rod apertures,
- raise the TOP TETHER cover, located on the rear shelf (Saloon) or the roof (Tourer),
- secure the upper strap fixing to the ring **B** or **C**,
- tighten the upper strap.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

! Observe strictly the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

ISOFIX child seat recommended by CITROËN and type approved for your vehicle

RÖMER BabySafe Plus ISOFIX (size category E)

Group 0+: up to 13 kg



Installed in the rearward facing position using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, that must be in contact with the floor of the vehicle. This child seat can also be secured using a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and is attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point sea belt.

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed in the forward facing position.
Fitted with an upper strap to be secured to the upper ring **B** or **C**, referred to as the TOP TETHER.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.
This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.



Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Positions for fitting ISOFIX child seats

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of ISOFIX child seats to seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mounting points.

For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

| | Weight of child/Age given as a guide | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|----------------|---|----|
| | Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months | | Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to 13 kg (group 0+) Up to approx. 1 year | | | 9 to 18 kg (group 1) Approx. 1 to 3 years | | | | |
| Type of ISOFIX child seat | Shell | | rearward facing | | | rearward facing | | forward facing | | |
| ISOFIX size class | F | G | C | D | E | C | D | A | B | B1 |
| ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats can be installed on the outer rear seats | IL-SU* | | IL-SU | | | IL-SU | | IUF/IL-SU | | |

IUF: Seat position suitable for installation of an Isofix **Universal** "Forward facing" seat attached using the top tether.

IL-SU: Seat position suitable for installation of an **ISOFIX Semi-Universal** child seat, either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a shell fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

To attach the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

i Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

* The ISOFIX shell, fixed to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.



Activation

☞ Press button **A**.

The indicator lamp in button **A** comes on, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again.

The indicator lamp in button **A** goes off, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

i Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 71 litres*.

Low fuel level



- When the minimum level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied

by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen. When it first comes on, there remains around 5 litres of fuel in the tank. You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

Opening the fuel flap



- Press at the top left corner, then pull on its edge.

Refuelling



- turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap,
- when refuelling, place the cap on hook A,
- fill the tank, but **do not persist after the third cut-off**; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

While you are refuelling, the engine must be stopped and the ignition switched off.

For a petrol engine with a catalytic converter, unleaded fuel is compulsory.

i Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be taken into account by the fuel gauge.

The filler neck is narrower to ensure that only unleaded petrol nozzles can be put in.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise of an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is entirely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

* 55 litres for Slovakia.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

* According to country of sale.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 bio-petrol (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.



SP95

SP95
E10

SP98



DIESEL

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

Bleeding the Diesel fuel filter

Protective cover



Removing the cover

HDi 140 engine

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by first unclipping at 3, then 1 and 4.
- ☞ Unclip at 2 by pulling towards you, then lift up.

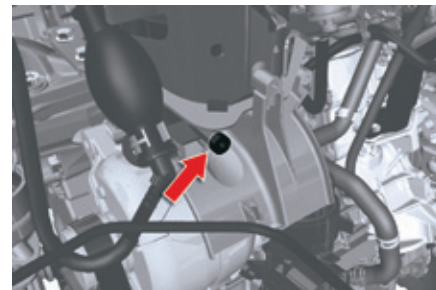
HDi 115 and HDi 160 engines

- ☞ Pull the protective cover upwards to remove it.

Refitting

- ☞ Firstly clip in at 2.
- ☞ Lower and centre the cover.
- ☞ Clip in at 3 and 4, pushing vertically and gently from the rear.
- ☞ Clip in at 1 pushing vertically.

Bleeding water from the fuel filter



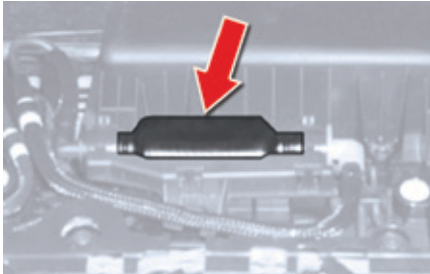
Bleed regularly (at each oil change).

To bleed the water, slacken the bleed screw or the water in diesel fuel sensor, located at the base of the filter.

Continue until all the water has flowed out. Then tighten the bleed screw or the water detection sensor.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

HDi 115 engine



- ☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.

HDi 140 and HDi 160 engines



- ☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.

Priming the fuel system

In the event of running out of fuel:

- ☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres) and removing the protective cover, operate the manual priming pump, until some resistance is felt,
- ☞ operate the starter motor while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait fifteen seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again and then try to start the engine.

When the engine is idling, accelerate slightly to complete the bleeding of the circuit.

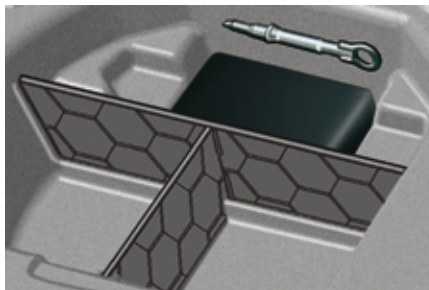


HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

For any work on your vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits the **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is located in the boot under the floor.

i This repair kit is available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop. It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, located exclusively on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

Using the kit



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Affix the speed limitation sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



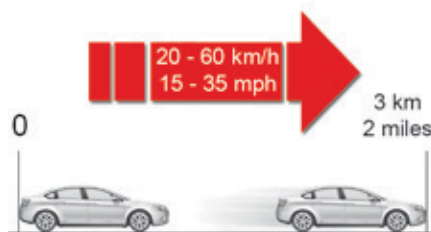
- ☞ Check that the switch **A** is in position "**0**".
- ☞ Connect the pipe of the cartridge **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **A** to position "1" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



- ☞ Remove the compressor and unclip and store the cartridge in a sealed bag to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the pressure.



- ☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.

! If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a CITROËN dealer to have your vehicle repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position "1"; to deflate: switch **A** in position "0" and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the left-hand side), then remember to check that the leak has been plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- ☞ Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).
- ☞ Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.

! Take care as sealant cartridge contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children. The expiry date of the sealant is indicated on the base of the cartridge. The cartridge is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop.

i If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Access to the tools



The tools are to be found in a protective holder inside the spare wheel.

☞ Pull back the retaining strap for access.



List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.

1. Wheelbrace.
Used for removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Bolt head finisher tool.
Used to remove the wheel bolt protectors (finishers) on wheel bolts with alloy wheels.
4. Towing eye.
See the "Towing the vehicle" section.
5. Wheel chock*

* Depending on country of sale.

Access to the spare wheel



To remove the spare wheel

- ☞ Saloon: raise the boot floor and fold in two.
- ☞ Tourer: raise the boot floor and hook it using the retractable handle. Secure the hook to the top part of the boot.
- ☞ Detach the strap then push the wheel forwards so as to be able to lift it.

To reposition the spare wheel

- ☞ Position the spare wheel flat in the boot, then pull it towards you.
- ☞ Next place the toolbox inside the wheel, then secure the assembly with the strap.
- ☞ Release the boot floor to return it to its initial position.



The tyre pressures are indicated on the label located on the driver's side centre door pillar. Tyre pressures are given for different vehicle loading conditions.

Removing a wheel



- ☞ Park the vehicle on stable, firm ground that is not slippery. apply the parking brake.
- ☞ If your vehicle is equipped with "Hydractive III+" suspension, with the engine running at idle, adjust the ground clearance to its maximum height.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and engage first gear (position **R** for an electronic gearbox; **P** for an automatic gearbox).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with "Hydractive III+" suspension, position the chock, whichever direction the gradient may be in, in front of the front wheel diametrically opposite to the one to be replaced.

! Before positioning the jack:

- ☞ Always adjust the vehicle's ground clearance to the "maximum height" position and retain this adjustment for as long as the jack is under the vehicle (do not use the hydraulic adjustments),
- ☞ Ensure that any passengers have left the vehicle and are in a safe place.

Never get underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack.

The jack and all of the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for any other applications.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.



List of operations

- ☞ Remove the protector from each bolt using tool 3.
- ☞ Fit the security bolt socket to the wheelbrace to slacken the security bolt (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using just the wheelbrace 1.



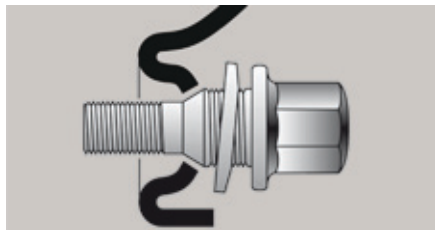
- ☞ Position the foot of the jack **2** on the ground, ensuring that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle must engage with the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily fit the spare (non punctured) spare wheel.
- ☞ Remove the bolts and stow them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is positioned only at one of the jacking points under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

Wheel for temporary use



Your vehicle may be fitted with a spare wheel which is different to those on the vehicle. When fitting the spare wheel, it is normal to notice that the wheel bolt washers do not come into contact with the wheel rim. The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt contact surfaces are clean and in good condition.

Fitting a wheel



List of operations

- ☞ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ☞ Fit and tighten the bolts by hand.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace 1 and security bolt socket (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using just the wheelbrace 1.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle to the ground.
- ☞ Lower the jack 2 and remove it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **1** and security bolt socket (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using just the wheelbrace **1**.
- ☞ Refit the protectors on the bolts.
- ☞ Stow the tools in the carrier box.
- ☞ Return the suspension to the normal position.
- ☞ Ensure the tyre pressure is correct and have the balancing checked.



If your vehicle is fitted with a spare wheel of a different size to those on the vehicle, you must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) whilst using the spare wheel. The wheel bolts are specific to the type of wheel.

If the type of wheel is changed, check with your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels. Take care to note down the code number engraved on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from your dealer.



Tyre under-inflation detection

The space-saver type or steel spare wheel does not have a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

- i** The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

| Original tyre size | Chain specification |
|--------------------|--|
| 225/60 V16 | Maximum link size: 9 mm |
| 225/55 W17 | |
| 245/45 W18 | These tyres cannot be fitted with chains |
| 245/40 Y19 | |

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps



Model with Xenon headlamps (D1S)

1. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main): D1S**
2. **Cornering lighting: HP19**
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)**

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing HP19 and D1S bulbs and LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You are advised to change both D1S bulbs at the same time, if one of them has failed.



Model with halogen headlamps

1. **Main beams:** H1
2. **Dipped beams:** H7
3. **Directional lighting:** H7
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)**

For the maintenance of the front lamps and changing LED lamps, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Main beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cap **A**.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining spring.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it, paying attention to the direction of fitting.
- ☞ Refit the retaining spring.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **A**.



Dipped beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- ☞ Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- ☞ Take out the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- ☞ Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **B**.



Directional lamp

- ☞ Remove the protective cap **C**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- ☞ Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- ☞ Take out the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- ☞ Refit the connector, until it is all the way in.
- ☞ Refit the protective cap **C**.



Direction indicators

- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.
- ☞ Detach the bulb **C** by pressing on bars **1** and **2**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector (pull whilst pressing on the grey tongue using a flat screwdriver).
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the connector (push the grey tongue in well).

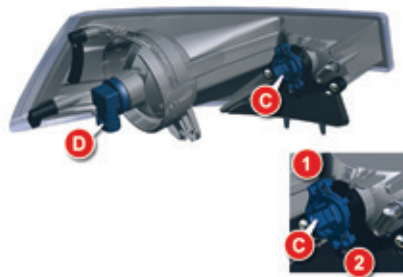
- ☞ Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- ☞ Refit the lamp screws.
- ☞ Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.

Bulbs: HP24W



Front foglamps

- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **D**.



- ☞ Remove the bulb by performing a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the connector **D**.
- ☞ Refit the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- ☞ Refit the lamp screws.
- ☞ Position the cover using its guides and refit the screws.

Bulbs: H8



Side repeaters

The side repeater is sealed.
If the bulb is faulty, replace the side repeater.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

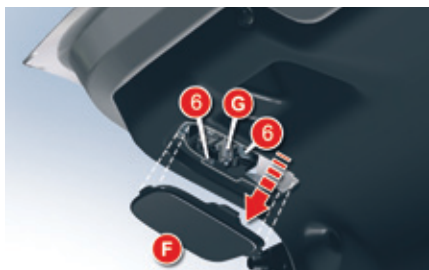
i When refitting, take care not to trap the electrical cables.

Rear lamps (Saloon)



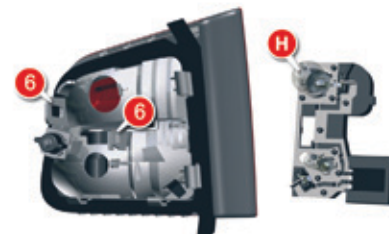
Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:**
P 21 W / 5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H 21 W
4. **Foglamps:** H 21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY 21 W



Boot-mounted lamps

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Using a flat screwdriver, remove the 3 clips which fix the trim in the lamp area.
- ☞ Partially remove the trim **F**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **G**.



- ☞ Unclip the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Check that the bulb holder **H** is secured correctly by the two clips **6**.
- ☞ Refit the connector **G**.
- ☞ Replace and fix the trim **F** with its clips.

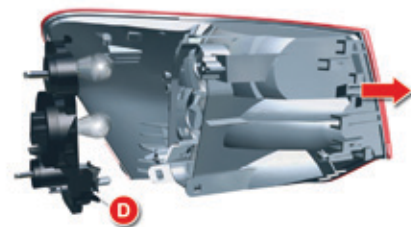


Wing-mounted lamps

- ☞ Remove the lateral boot trim flap **A**. To do so, pull it towards the inside of the boot, then pull it upwards.



- ☞ Disconnect connector **B**.
- ☞ Unscrew the 2 fixings **C**.
- ☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the 2 fixings **C**.
- ☞ Refit connector **B**.
- ☞ Refit the trim **A**.

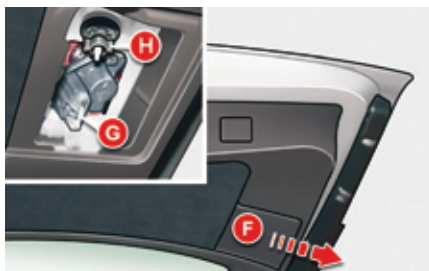
You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixings **C**.

Rear lamps (Tourer)



Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Brake lamps and sidelamps:**
P 21 W / 5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamps:** H 21 W
4. **Fog lamps:** H 21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** PY 21 W



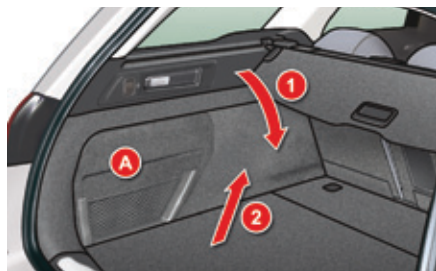
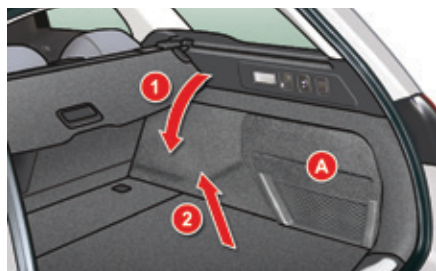
Boot-mounted lamps

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Using a flat screwdriver, remove the plastic cover **F**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **G**.
- ☞ Unscrew the fixing nut **H**.
- ☞ Disengage the lamp from its housing.



- ☞ Unclip the bulb holder **J**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder **J** ensuring that it is correctly clipped in place.
- ☞ Position the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Tighten the fixing nut **H**.
- ☞ Refit the connector **G**.
- ☞ Position and clip in place the plastic cover **F**.

You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut **H**.

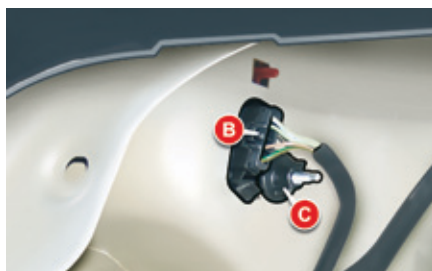


Wing-mounted lamps

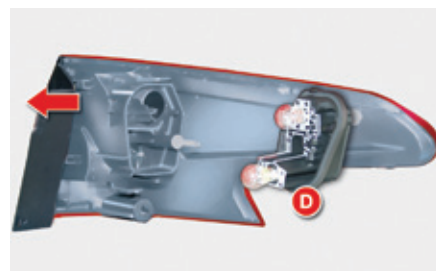
Remove the lateral boot trim A.

To do so:

- ☞ Pull it towards towards the inside of the boot.
- ☞ Pull it upwards.



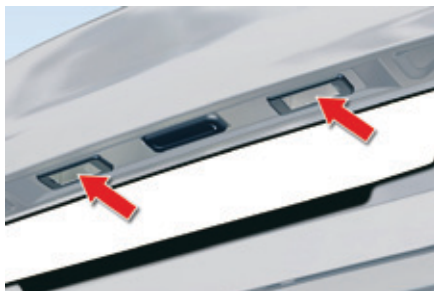
- ☞ Disconnect the connector B.
- ☞ Unscrew the fixing nut C.
- ☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder D.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Refit the bulb holder D.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the fixing nut C.
- ☞ Refit the connector B.
- ☞ Refit the trim A.

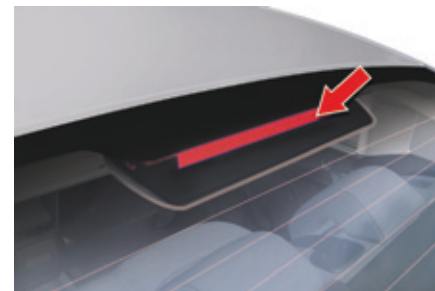
You can use the wheelbrace to screw or unscrew the fixing nut C.

Number plate lamps (W5W)



- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.



Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lamps



Roof lamps

- ☞ Unclip the transparent cover of the roof lamp to reach the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W



Rear reading lamps (Tourer)

- ☞ Detach the cover of the reading lamp to access the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W



Boot lamp

- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.

Map reading lamp

- ☞ Detach the cover.
- ☞ If necessary, detach the partition of the affected map reading lamp.



Pavement lighting

☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.



Floor lighting

☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5W bulb.



Glove box

☞ Detach the cover and use a a W 5W bulb.

Changing a fuse

The 2 fuseboxes are located below the dashboard and under the bonnet.

Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, you must:

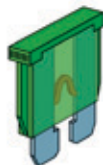
- ascertain the cause of the fault and have it remedied,
- switch off all electrical consumers,
- park the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- identify the failed fuse using the allocation tables and diagrams presented on the following pages.

When replacing a fuse, it is essential to:

- use the special tweezer 1, located on the cover close to the fusebox, to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- always replace a failed fuse with one of equivalent rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Good



Failed



Tweezer 1



The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction on your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Installation of electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



CITROËN will not accept any responsibility for the costs incurred in repairing your vehicle or for the malfunctions resulting from the installation of auxiliary accessories which were not supplied or recommended by CITROËN and which were not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular where the current consumption of all the the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamps.

Fuses under the dashboard

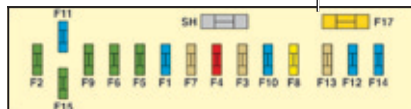
Access to the fuses

- ☞ fully open the storage box then pull firmly on it horizontally,
- ☞ remove the trim by pulling sharply on the bottom.

When refitting the storage box, observe the following advice:

- With the storage box horizontal, refit the bottom ensuring that the lower cut-outs are in line with the pins.
- Give a sharp push to the front.
- Close the storage box, ensuring that the springs located behind pass over the top.

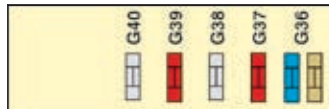
Fusebox A



Fusebox C



Tweezer 1



Fusebox B

Fusebox A

| Fuse N° | Rating | Function |
|---------|--------|--|
| G29 | - | Not used |
| G30 | 5 A | Heated door mirrors |
| G31 | 5 A | Rain and sunshine sensor |
| G32 | 5 A | Seat belt not fastened warning lamps |
| G33 | 5 A | Electrochrome mirrors |
| G34 | 20 A | Sunroof (saloon) |
| G35 | 5 A | Passenger door lighting - Passenger door mirror adjustment |
| G36 | 30 A | Electric tailgate (Tourer) |
| G37 | 20 A | Heated front seats |
| G38 | 30 A | Driver's electric seat |
| G39 | 30 A | Passenger's electric seat - Hi-Fi amplifier |
| G40 | 3 A | Trailer relay unit supply |

Fusebox B

| Fuse N° | Rating | Function |
|---------|--------|---|
| G36 | 15 A | 6-speed automatic gearbox |
| | 5 A | 4-speed automatic gearbox |
| G37 | 10 A | Daytime running lamps - Diagnostic socket |
| G38 | 3 A | DSC/ASR |
| G39 | 10 A | Hydraulic suspension |
| G40 | 3 A | STOP switch |

Fusebox C

| Fuse N° | Rating | Function |
|---------|--------|--|
| F1 | 15 A | Rear screen wipe (Tourer) |
| F2 | 30 A | Locking and deadlocking relay |
| F3 | 5 A | Airbags |
| F4 | 10 A | Automatic gearbox - Additional heater unit (Diesel) - Electrochrome rear view mirrors |
| F5 | 30 A | Front window - Sun roof - Passenger door lighting - Passenger door mirror adjustment |
| F6 | 30 A | Rear window |
| F7 | 5 A | Vanity mirror lighting - Glove box lighting - Interior lamps - Torch (Tourer) |
| F8 | 20 A | Radio - CD changer - Steering mounted controls - Screen - Under-inflation detection - Electric boot ECU |
| F9 | 30 A | Cigarette lighter - Front 12 V socket |
| F10 | 15 A | Alarm - Steering mounted controls, lighting, signalling and wiper stalks |
| F11 | 15 A | Low current anti-theft switch |
| F12 | 15 A | Driver's electric seat - Instrument panel - Seat belt not fastened warning lamps - Air conditioning controls |
| F13 | 5 A | Engine relay unit - Hydraulic suspension pump cut-off relay - Airbag ECU supply |
| F14 | 15 A | Rain and sunshine sensor - Parking sensors - Passenger's electric seat - Trailer relay unit - HI-FI amplifier ECU - Bluetooth system - Lane Departure Warning System |
| F15 | 30 A | Locking and deadlocking relay |
| F17 | 40 A | Heated rear screen - Heated door mirrors |
| FSH | SHUNT | PARK SHUNT |

Fuses under the bonnet



Access to the fuses

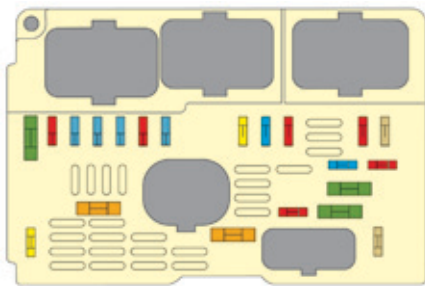
- ☞ Undo each screw by a 1/4 turn.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.

i After a repair, take care to close the cover correctly to ensure that it is sealed correctly.

Any repairs on the MAXI fuses (that give additional protection) located in the fuseboxes, must be left to a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Table of fuses

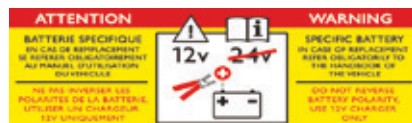
| Fuse N° | Rating | Function |
|---------|--------|--|
| F1 | 20 A | Engine control unit |
| F2 | 15 A | Horn |
| F3 | 10 A | Screen wash pump |
| F4 | 10 A | Headlamp wash pump |
| F5 | 15 A | Engine actuators |
| F6 | 10 A | Air flow meter - Directional headlamps - Diagnostic socket |
| F7 | 10 A | Automatic gearbox lever lock - Power steering |
| F8 | 25 A | Starter motor |
| F9 | 10 A | Clutch switch - Stop switch |
| F10 | 30 A | Engine actuators |
| F11 | 40 A | Air conditioning blower |
| F12 | 30 A | Wipers |
| F13 | 40 A | BSI supply (ignition on) |
| F14 | 30 A | - |
| F15 | 10 A | Right-hand main beam |
| F16 | 10 A | Left-hand main beam |
| F17 | 15 A | Right-hand dipped beam |
| F18 | 15 A | Left-hand dipped beam |
| F19 | 15 A | Engine actuators |
| F20 | 10 A | Engine actuators |
| F21 | 5 A | Engine actuators |

**Table of fuses**

| Fuse N° | Rating | Function |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| F6 | 25 A | Rear 12 V socket (max power: 100 W) |
| F7 | 15 A | Foglamps |
| F8 | 20 A | Additional burner (Diesel) |
| F9 | 30 A | Electric parking brake |

Battery

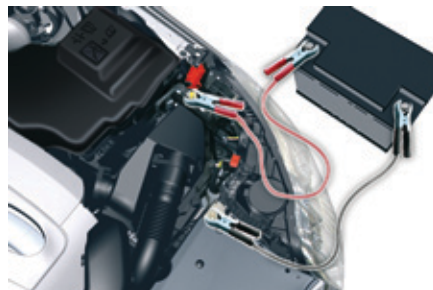
Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.



! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

i After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery

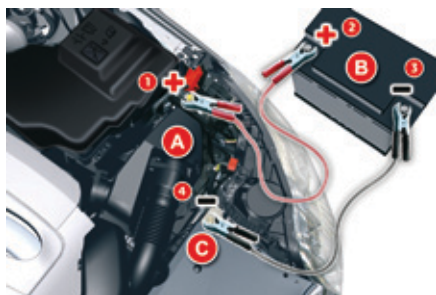


The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox to remove the battery, if necessary.

Starting using another battery



- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Operate the starter, let the engine run.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

i With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

! Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight malfunctions remain following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the glass panoramic roof blind,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.



The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Wash your hands afterwards.



Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.



Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped headlamps, courtesy lights, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

i This period may be significantly reduced if the battery charge is low.

Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

- i** If the telephone is being used at this time:
- it will be maintained for five minutes with hands-free kit of your Audio system,
 - it will be maintained for ten minutes with your eMyWay.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

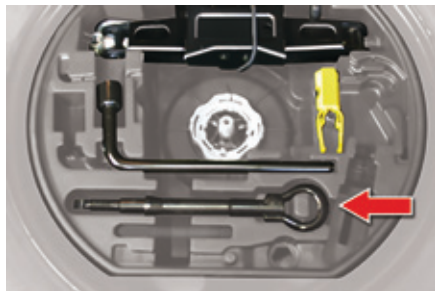
The time available will then be double the duration for which the engine was left running. However, this time will always be between five and thirty minutes.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding section).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the jack box placed in the spare wheel.

For access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the jack box.

Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Attach a towing arm.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).

i Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

In the event of a problem or malfunction with the electronic gearbox, the vehicle may be immobilised with a gear engaged. In this case the front of the vehicle must be lifted for towing.

Towing another vehicle



i When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towing arm. When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment. When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing:
 - on the right (Saloon),
 - at the bottom (Tourer).
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Attach a towing arm.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Blanking cover



When towing, you must remove the blanking cover in the front bumper as well as the bonnet seal if fitted. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for this.

Roof bars

The design of your vehicle requires the use of roof bars that are tested and approved by CITROËN, for your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate.

Regardless of the type of loading equipment to be transported on the roof (bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), it is imperative that you add transverse roof bars. Any securing or lashing to components other than the roof bars is strictly prohibited.



Maximum load that can be distributed on the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm; except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

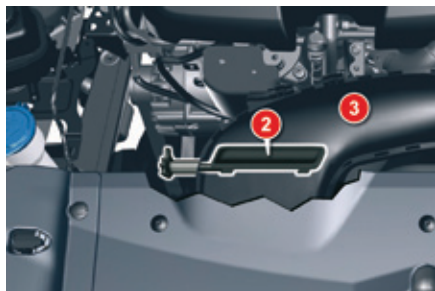
Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute your load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and draw attention to it if any part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

Very cold climate protection*

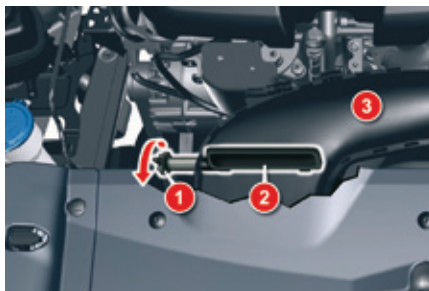
Adjustable device which prevents the intake of snow particles, which could obstruct the air filter.

HDi 160 Diesel engine



Normal position

The flap 2 is in a horizontal position in the air duct 3.



Snow position

☞ Push and rotate the knob 1 by 90 ° in the direction of the arrow in order to position the flap 2 in a vertical position in the air duct 3.

To return to the normal position, push the knob 1 then rotate in the opposite direction.

i

It is essential to remove the very cold protection when:

- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C.
- driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

* Depending on country of sale.

Cold climate screen*

Removable screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



Before fitting



After fitting

Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the 2 sections of the snow guard to the upper and lower sections of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press on the surround to clip in one by one the fixing clips.

Remove

- ☞ Using a screwdriver, lever each fixing clip in turn to disengage them.

- i** Don't forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:
- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
 - towing,
 - When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

* Depending on country of sale.

Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance your vehicle are given in the maintenance and warranty guide.

Matt paint

If your vehicle is finished with a clear matt lacquer, please observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the paintwork by the use of an inappropriate cleaning procedures.

These recommendations are also valid for alloy road wheels finished with clear matt lacquer.



Never clean the vehicle without water.

Never wash your vehicle in an automatic roller brush car wash.

Never polish the vehicle body, nor the alloy wheels. Doing this will make the paintwork shiny.

Do not use paint cleaners, abrasive products or paint polishing or preserving products (such as wax, for example) on the paintwork. These products are only suitable for bright finishes.

Application of these products on vehicles with a matt finish will seriously damage the paint surface of the vehicle, giving rise to irreversible shiny or stained areas.

Never use a high pressure jet wash with a lance fitted with a brush, this may scratch the paintwork.

Never select a wash programme that finishes with a hot wax cycle.



We recommend the use of a high pressure jet wash, or at least a water hose with a high output.

We recommend that the vehicle be rinsed using de-ionised water.

Use only a microfibre cloth to dry the vehicle. It must be clean and used without heavy pressure.

Lightly wipe off any fuel stains present on the bodywork using a soft cloth, then leave to dry.

From the range of cleaning and maintenance products in the "TECHNATURE" range recommended and approved by CITROËN, use only the insect remover and car shampoo, which are the only products to be used on the bodywork.

The insect remover can also be used to remove minor marks (for example: finger marks...).

Always have paint repairs done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts are all suitable for your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

"Comfort":

front and rear parking sensors, isotherm module, reading lamp, sun blinds, headrest-mounted coat hanger...

"Style":

alloy wheels, rear spoiler, chromed mirror shells, door sill protectors, gear lever knobs...

"Protection":

mats*, seat covers, mud flaps, bumper protectors, vehicle covers, door and boot sill protectors...

"Transport solutions":

boot liner, boot carpet, towbars, towbar wiring harness, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, boot dividers, boot net, boot organiser, sliding boot tray, platform on towbar, ...

"Security and safety":

anti-intrusion alarm, warning triangle and high visibility vest, breathalyzer, first aid kit, snow chains, non-skid covers, security wheel bolts, vehicle tracking system, child seats, fire extinguisher, caravan mirror, pet cage and seat belt, dog guard...

- * To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
 - never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":

Wi-Fi on board, 230V socket, audio systems, speakers, semi-integral navigation systems, portable navigation systems, hands-free kit, DVD player, USB Box, mapping update CD, driving aid, Hi-Fi module...

i Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

! The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed for CITROËN, lubricants to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring. For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain of the best performance for your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performances of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



CITROËN prefers TOTAL



Bonnet

Opening

- !** Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



- ☞ Open the left hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ At the front of the bonnet, lift the safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and pivot it to insert it in the notch **D** indicated by a yellow arrow.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

- !** When the engine is hot, handle the safety catch and bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

- !** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

- i** The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the left hand front door is closed. This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary. Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

Closing

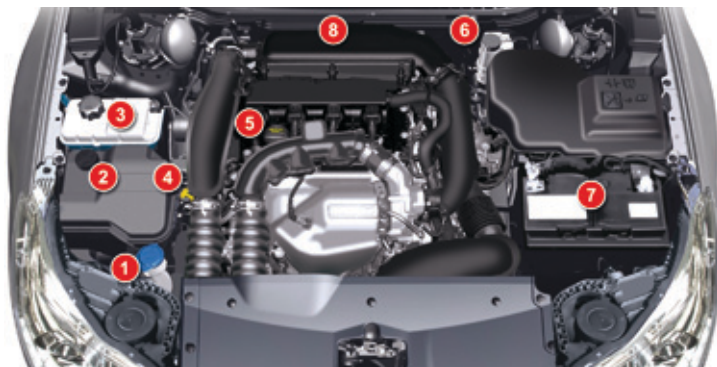
- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet then slam it firmly at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully closed.

- i** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Petrol engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels and for replacing certain components.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.



1.6i THP



1.6i VTi

Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking fluid levels, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir, depending on equipment.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.



HDi 115 / e-HDi 115

! As the Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure, never carry out any work yourself on this system. Vehicles fitted with the **HDi 140** engine may be fitted with metal spring suspension. In this case, a different power steering fluid reservoir is fitted.



HDi 140

HDi 160 - HDi 200 engines

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant header tank.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.



HDi 160

- !** The Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:
- Never carry out any work yourself on this system.
 - HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require special qualifications which only a CITROËN dealer can guarantee.



HDi 200

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles with an electric oil level gauge, or using the dipstick.

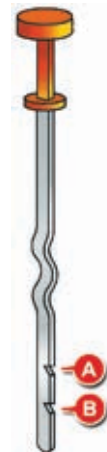
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ⌚ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ⌚ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ⌚ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ⌚ Add more oil if necessary.
- ⌚ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering or power steering and suspension fluid level



For topping up, it is necessary to go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be replaced at routine services.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Reservoir capacity (depending on version).

- screenwash fluid: approximately 3.5 litres,
- screenwash and headlamp wash fluid: approximately 6.15 litres.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle filter)

SERVICE

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

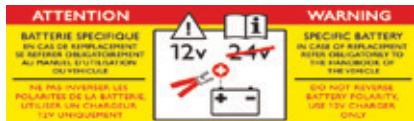
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary.**

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by trapping unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

i If there is risk of blockage, a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal and illumination of the service warning lamp. This alert tells you that the particle filter is approaching saturation (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.) To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).
If this alert persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Engines and gearboxes

| Petrol engine | 1.6i VTi 120 | 1.6i THP 155 | |
|---|--|------------------------|---------------------|
| Gearbox | Electronic gearbox system (6-speed) | Automatic (6-speed) | Manual (6-speed) |
| Model code: RD... RW... | 5FS-8/P | 5FV-5FN/A | 5FV-5FN/8 |
| Cubic capacity (cc) | 1 598 | 1 598 | |
| Bore x stroke (mm) | 77 x 85.8 | 77 x 85.8 | |
| EU standard maximum power (kW)* / hp DIN | 88 / 120 | 115** / 159 | |
| Maximum power engine speed (rpm) | 6 000 | 6 000 | |
| EU standard maximum torque (Nm) | 160 | 240 | |
| Maximum torque engine speed (rpm) | 4 250 | 1 400 | |
| Fuel | Unleaded | Unleaded | |
| Catalytic converter | Yes | Yes | |
| Engine oil capacity (with filter replacement) | 4.25 | 4.25 | 4.25 |

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (directive 1999/99/EC).

** In Russia, the maximum power is 110 kW and in Brazil, the maximum power is 120 kW.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg

| Petrol engine | 1.6i VTi 120 | 1.6i THP 155 | |
|--|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Gearbox | Electronic gearbox system | Automatic | Manual |
| Model code: RD... | 5FS-8/P | 5FV-5FN/A | 5FV-5FN/8 |
| Unladen weight | 1 425 | 1 515 | 1 471 |
| Kerb weight | 1 500 | 1 590 | 1 546 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 018 | 2 026 | 2 065 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 318 | 3 526 | 3 565 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 300 | 1 500 | 1 500 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 570 | 1 710 | 1 730 |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 |
| Recommended nose weight | 64 | 69 | 70 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must never exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg

| Petrol engine | 1.6i VTi 120 | 1.6i THP 155 | |
|--|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Gearbox | Electronic gearbox system | Automatic | Manual |
| Model code: RW... | 5FS-8/P | 5FV-5FN/A | 5FV-5FN/8 |
| Unladen weight | 1 498 | 1 534 | 1 503 |
| Kerb weight | 1 573 | 1 609 | 1 578 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 133 | 2 200 | 2 167 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 433 | 3 700 | 3 667 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 300 | 1 500 | 1 500 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 600 | 1 790 | 1 790 |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 |
| Recommended nose weight | 65 | 74 | 73 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must never exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Engines and gearboxes

| Diesel engine | HDi 115 | e-HDi 115 | HDi 140 | |
|---|---------------------|--|---------------------|-------------|
| Gearbox | Manual (5-speed) | Electronic gearbox system (6-speed) | Manual (6-speed) | |
| Model code: RD... RW... | 9HL/8 | 9HR/8 | RHR-RHF/H-8 | RHA-RHD/H-8 |
| Cubic capacity (cc) | 1 560 | 1 560 | 1 997 | |
| Bore x stroke (mm) | 75 x 88.3 | 75 x 88.3 | 85 x 88 | |
| EU standard maximum power (kW)* / hp DIN | 84 / 115 | 84 / 115 | 103** / 140 | |
| Maximum power engine speed (rpm) | 3 600 | 3 600 | 4 000 | |
| EU standard maximum torque (Nm) | 240 | 270 | 320 | |
| Maximum torque engine speed (rpm) | 1 500 | 1 750 | 2 000 | 1 750 |
| Fuel | Diesel | Diesel | Diesel | |
| Catalytic converter | Yes | Yes | Yes | |
| Particle filter (FAP) | Yes | Yes | Yes | |
| Engine oil capacity (with filter replacement) | 3.75 | | 5,25 | 5.5 |

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (directive 1999/99/EC).

** In Belgium, the maximum power is 100 kW.

Engines and gearboxes

| Diesel engine | HDi 160 | | HDi 200 |
|---|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Gearbox | Manual (6-speed) | Automatic (6-speed) | Automatic (6-speed) |
| Model code: RD... RW... | RHH-RHE-RHD/8 | RHH-RHE-RHD/A | 4HL/A |
| Cubic capacity (cc) | 1 997 | | 2 179 |
| Bore x stroke (mm) | 85 x 88 | | 85 x 96 |
| EU standard maximum power (kW)* / hp DIN | 120** / 163 | | 150 / 206 |
| Maximum power engine speed (rpm) | 3 750 | | 3 500 |
| EU standard maximum torque (Nm) | 340 | | 450 |
| Maximum torque engine speed (rpm) | 2 000 | | 2 000 |
| Fuel | Diesel | | Diesel |
| Catalytic converter | Yes | | Yes |
| Particle filter (FAP) | Yes | | Yes |
| Engine oil capacity (with filter replacement) | 5.5 | | 5.25 |

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (directive 1999/99/EC).

** In Russia, the maximum power is 100 kW.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg

| Diesel engine | HDi 115 | e-HDi 115 | HDi 140 | |
|--|---------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Gearbox | Manual | Electronic gearbox system | Manual | |
| Model code: RD... | 9HL/8 | 9HR/8 | RHR-RHF/H-8 | RHA-RHD/H-8 |
| Unladen weight | 1 506 | 1 525 | 1 535 | 1 563 |
| Kerb weight | 1 581 | 1 600 | 1 683 | 1 638 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 041 | 2 062 | 2 155 | 2 156 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 141 | 3 162 | 3 755 | 3 656 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 100 | 1 100 | 1 600 | 1 500 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 340 | 1 340 | 1 840 | 1 740 |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 | |
| Recommended nose weight | 55 | 55 | 73 | 70 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx.) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Saloon) in kg

| Diesel engine | HDi 160 | | HDi 200 |
|--|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| Gearbox | Manual | Automatic | Automatic |
| Model code: RD... | RHH-RHE-RHD/8 | RHH-RHE-RHD/A | 4HL/A |
| Unladen weight | 1 563 | 1 609 | 1 660 |
| Kerb weight | 1 638 | 1 684 | 1 806 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 156 | 2 190 | 2 231 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 656 | 3 290 | 3 831 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 500 | 1 100 | 1 600 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 740 | 1 390 | 1 850 |
| Unbrakes trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 |
| Recommended nose weight | 70 | 57 | 73 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx.) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg

| Diesel engine | HDi 115 | e-HDi 115 | HDi 140 | |
|--|---------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Gearbox | Manual | Electronic gearbox system | Manual | |
| Model code: RW... | 9HL/8 | 9HR/8 | RHR-RHF/H-8 | RHA-RHD/H-8 |
| Unladen weight | 1 538 | 1 540 | 1 655 | 1 595 |
| Kerb weight | 1 613 | 1 615 | 1 730 | 1 670 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 153 | 2 174 | 2 276 | 2 238 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 153 | 3 174 | 3 776 | 3 638 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 000 | 1 000 | 1 500 | 1 400 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 300 | 1 300 | 1 800 | 1 670 |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 | |
| Recommended nose weight | 53 | 54 | 72 | 67 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer) in kg

| Diesel engine | HDi 160 | | HDi 200 |
|--|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| Gearbox | Manual | Automatic | Automatic |
| Model code: RW... | RHH-RHE-RHD/8 | RHH-RHE-RHD/A | 4HL/A |
| Unladen weight | 1 595 | 1 642 | 1 767 |
| Kerb weight | 1 670 | 1 717 | 1 842 |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW) | 2 238 | 2 286 | 2 367 |
| Gross train weight (GTW) | 3 638 | 3 286 | 3 967 |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope | 1 400 | 1 000 | 1 600 |
| Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 670 | 1 290 | 1 890 |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | 750 |
| Recommended nose weight | 67 | 53 | 76 |

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must never exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Weights and towed loads (Tourer commercial versions) in kg

| Diesel engine | HDi 115 | HDi 140 | |
|--|---------|---------|---------------|
| Gearbox | Manual | Manual | |
| Model code: RW... | 9HL0/U | RHF8/U | RHA8 - RHD8/U |
| Unladen weight | 1 486 | 1 585 | - |
| Kerb weight* | 1 561 | 1 660 | - |
| Gross vehicle weight (GVW)** | 2 155 | 2 247 | - |
| Gross train weight (GTW)*** | 3 155 | 3 747 | - |
| Braked trailer (within GTW limit) - on a 10% or 12% slope**** | 1 000 | 1 500 | - |
| Braked trailer (with load transfer within GTW limit) | X | X | |
| Unbraked trailer | 750 | 750 | |
| Recommended nose weight | 53 | 72 | 67 |

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + the driver (75kg).

** Exceeding the maximum weight on the rear axle when towing involves restricting the maximum speed to 80 km/h (approximately 50 mph) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when towing involves restricting the maximum speed to 80 km/h (approximately 50 mph) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

**** Maximum braked trailer weight within the GTW limit; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

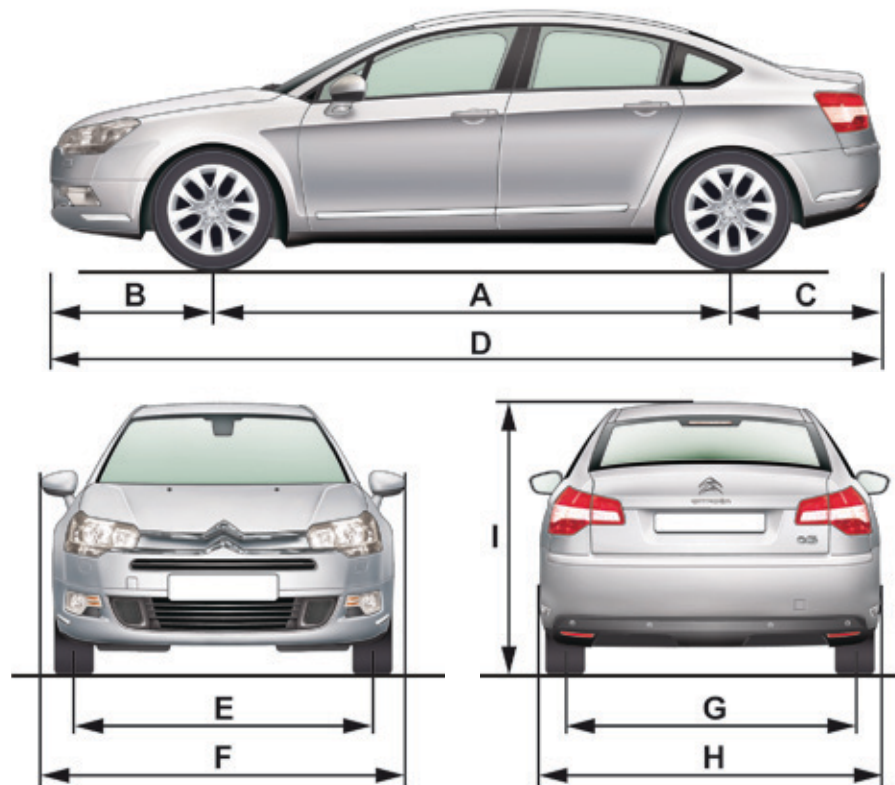
Dimensions (in mm)

Exterior (Saloon)

| | |
|----|------------------|
| A | 2 815 |
| B | 1 054 |
| C | 910 |
| D | 4 779 |
| E | 1 586 |
| F | 2 096 |
| G | 1 557 |
| H | 1 860 |
| I* | 1 451 1 458** |

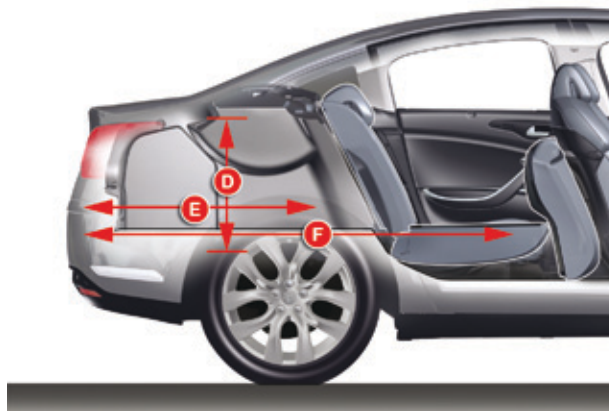
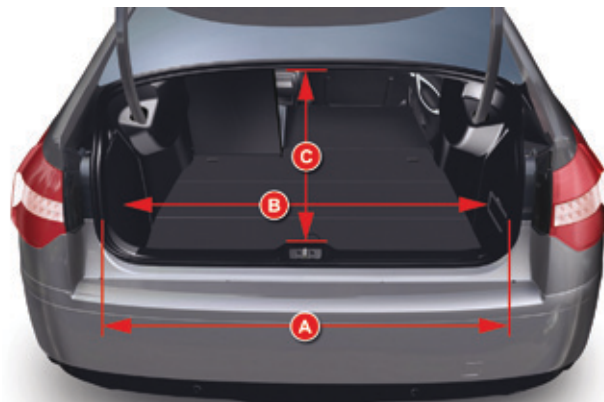
* Without roof bars.

** With metal spring suspension.



Interior (Saloon)

| | |
|---|-------|
| A | 1 030 |
| B | 1 115 |
| C | 566 |
| D | 504 |
| E | 1 040 |
| F | 1 705 |



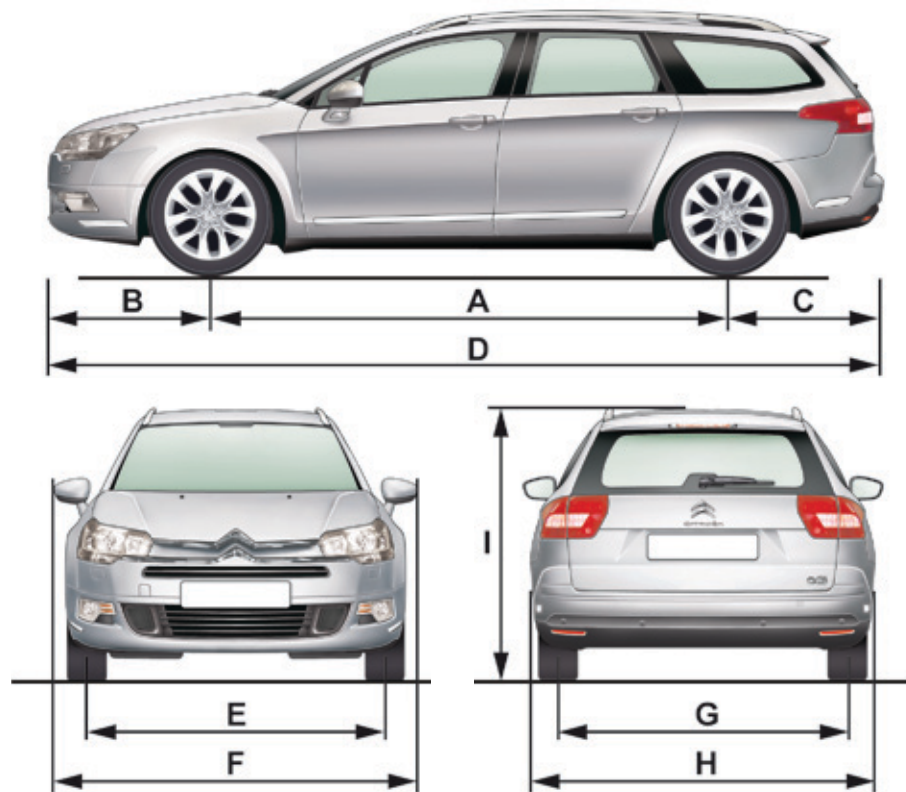
Exterior (Tourer)

| | |
|----|-------------------|
| A | 2 815 |
| B | 1 054 1 065*** |
| C | 959 |
| D | 4 829 4 840*** |
| E | 1 586 |
| F | 2 096 |
| G | 1 557 |
| H | 1 860 |
| I* | 1 479 1 483** |

* Without roof bars.

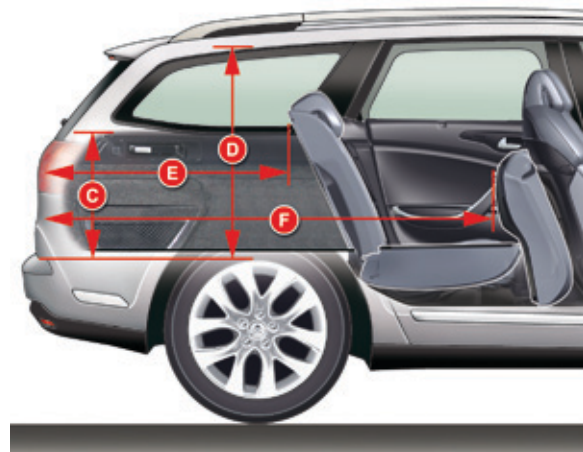
** With metal spring suspension.

*** Crosstourer version.



Interior (Tourer)

| | |
|---|-------|
| A | 1 060 |
| B | 1 115 |
| C | 510 |
| D | 851 |
| E | 1 058 |
| F | 1 723 |



Identification markings

Various visible markings for identification of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also indicated on the registration document.

All genuine CITROËN replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the warranty, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts.



A. VIN plate

On the left hand centre door pillar.

1. EU type approval number.
2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
3. Gross vehicle weight.
4. Gross train weight.
5. Maximum weight on front axle.
6. Maximum weight on rear axle.

B. VIN stamped on body

C. VIN on dashboard

D. Paint colour code and tyre reference

Tyre pressures

On the driver's side centre pillar.

i Observe the tyre pressures indicated by CITROËN.
Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold.
Never deflate a warm tyre.
When changing tyres, it is essential to use the sizes recommended for your vehicle.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

CITROËN Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call. The green LED goes off.

Pressing this button (at any time) for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

If you benefit from the CITROËN eTouch offer, you also have available additional services in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on www.citroen.com.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down. A voice message confirms that the call has been made*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



eMyWay

GPS navigation system

Multimedia audio system

Bluetooth® telephone



The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.



For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| 01 First steps - Control panel | p. 260 |
| 02 Steering mounted controls | p. 262 |
| 03 General operation | p. 263 |
| 04 Navigation - Guidance | p. 265 |
| 05 Traffic information | p. 278 |
| 06 Using the telephone | p. 281 |
| 07 Radio | p. 291 |
| 08 Music media players | p. 294 |
| 09 Audio settings | p. 300 |
| 10 Configuration | p. 301 |
| 11 Screen menu map | p. 302 |
| Frequently asked questions | p. 306 |

01 FIRST STEPS

Selection and confirmation OK knob:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.
Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).

MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.
Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu and display the recent destinations.

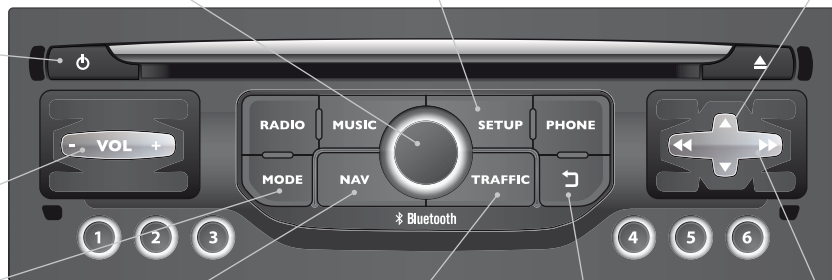
Open the **"Traffic information"** menu and display the current traffic alerts.

Abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.
Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:

- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in **"Move the map"** mode.



Select:

- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in **"Move the map"** mode.

01 FIRST STEPS

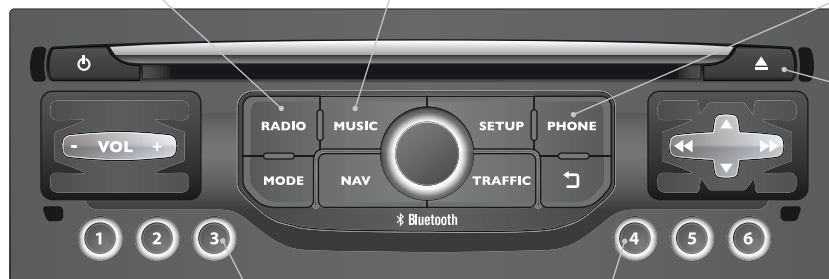
Access to the **"RADIO"** menu and display the list of stations received.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the radio tuner source.

Access to the **"MUSIC"** menu, and display of the CD/MP3/Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the **"MEDIA"** (CD/USB/iPod/Streaming/AUX) sources.

Open the **"Telephone"** menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.



Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.

Short press: select pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set the current station.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS



Successive presses: "Black Panel" mode - black screen (night driving).



Short press to make a telephone call.
Call / End call.
Access the telephone menu.
Display the call log.
Long press to reject an incoming call.



Press: repeat the current navigation instruction.



Successive presses: selection of the type of information present in the screen.



Rotation: gives access to the short-cut menus depending on the display in the screen.
Short press: confirm the choice displayed in the screen.
Long press: return to the main menu.



Short press: abandon the current operation, reject an incoming call.
Long press: return to initial display.



Menu: gives access to the main menu.



VOL +: increase volume.



VOL -: decrease volume.



Successive presses: mute / restore sound.



Short press: Radio: higher frequency.
Music players: next track.
Long press: fast play.



Short press: Radio: lower frequency.
Music players: previous track.
Long press: fast play.



Short press: display the list of radio frequencies available or tracks, albums, folders.
Long press: update the list of stations received.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

MODE

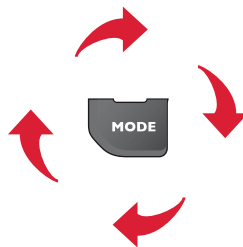
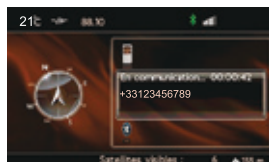
Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"**RADIO**"



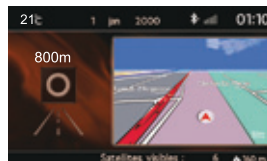
"**TELEPHONE**"

(If conversation in progress)



"**MAP IN WINDOW**"

(If navigation guidance in progress)



"**FULL SCREEN MAP**"



SETUP

SETUP: PARAMETERS

date and time, display configuration, sound, vehicle settings.

RADIO

Changing the audio source:

RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.

MUSIC: playing MUSIC.

MUSIC



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For the details of the menus, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Display according to context



A press on the knob gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

1 Change waveband

2 FM

2 AM

1 Services announcements

2 Traffic announcements (TA)

2 Information

2 Entertainment

2 Special or Urgent

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

1 Private mode

1 Put call on hold

1 DTMF ring tones

1 Hang up

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

1 Normal

1 Random

1 Random on all media

1 Repetition

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

1 Stop / Restore guidance

1 Select destination

2 Enter an address

2 Directory

2 GPS coordinates

1 Divert route

1 Move the map

2 Info. on location

2 Select as destination

2 Select as stage

2 Save this place (contacts)

2 Quit map mode

1 Guidance criteria

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A short press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

To delete the list of recent destinations, select **"Guidance options"** in the navigation menu then select **"Delete last destinations"** and confirm. Select **"Yes"** then confirm. Deleting just one destination is not possible.

"Navigation - guidance"

List of recent destinations.

"Select destination"
"Journey leg and route"
"Guidance options"
"Map management"
"Stop / Restore guidance"



To make full use of all of the functions of your navigation system, update the mapping regularly. Contact a CITROËN dealer or order your mapping update at <http://citroen.navigation.com>

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).








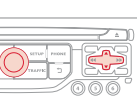



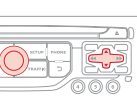


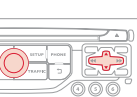

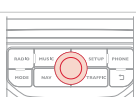

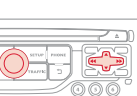

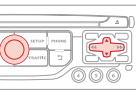
or



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Selecting a destination

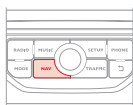
Towards a new destination


| | | | |
|--|---|--|---|
| <p>1</p>  <p>Press NAV to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.</p> |  | <p>6</p>  <p>Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm. A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "List" in the screen.</p> |  |
| <p>2</p>  <p>Select "Select destination" and confirm, then select "Enter an address" and confirm.</p> |  | <p>7</p>  <p>If possible, enter the "Road" and "N°/X" information in the same way.</p> |  |
| <p>3</p>  <p>Select the "Country" function then confirm.</p> |  | <p> Select "Archive" to save the address entered in a contact file. After about 60 seconds with no address entered, the system returns to the last home page; to return to the current input, start again with steps 1 and 2 then press again to find the current input.</p> | |
| <p>4</p>  <p>Select the "Town" or "Post code" function then confirm.</p> |  | <p>8</p>  <p>Confirm "OK" to start guidance.</p> |  |
| <p>5</p>  <p>Select the letters in the name of the town or the characters in a post code one at a time, confirming each one with the knob.</p> |  | <p>9</p>  <p>Select the guidance criteria: "Fastest route", "Shortest route" or optimised "Distance/Time", then select the desired restriction criteria: "With tolls", "With Ferry", or "Traffic info" then confirm "OK".</p> |  |

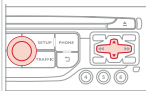
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards a recent destination

- 1  Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.

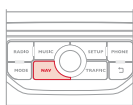



- 2  Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.

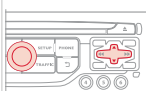


Delete recent destinations

- 1  Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



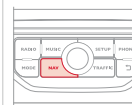
- 2  Select "Options" and confirm and then "Delete recent destinations" and confirm.




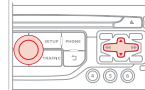
Towards a contact in the contacts directory


- i** Navigation towards a contact is only possible if it has an address entered in the audio navigation system.

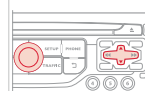
- 1  Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



- 2  Select "Select destination" and confirm, then select "Directory" and confirm.



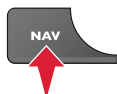
- 3  Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "OK" to start the guidance.



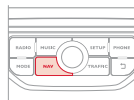
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards GPS coordinates

1



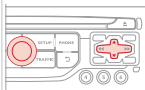
Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



2



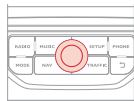
Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3



Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

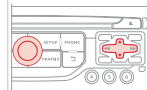


Towards a point on the map

1



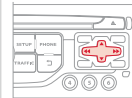
With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



2



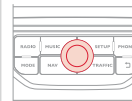
Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



3



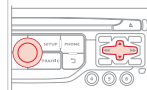
Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4



Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

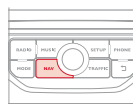
Towards points of interest (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



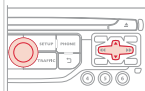
Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



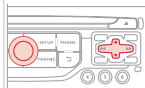
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (refer to the "Towards a new destination" section), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.

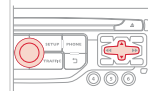


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



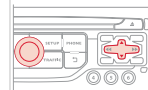
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



List of principal points of interest (POI)



Service station



Garage



CITROËN



Covered car park



Car park



Rest area



Hotel



Restaurant



Cafeteria



Bed and breakfast



Airport



Railway station



Bus station



Port



Industrial estate



Supermarket



Vending machine



Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground



Swimming pool



Winter sports resort



Cinema



Theme parks



Hospital, Chemist, Vet



Police station



School



Town hall



Post office



Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument



Tourist information, Tourist attraction



Risk areas / Danger areas*

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on:
<http://citroen.navigation.com>.

* According to availability in the country.

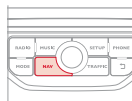
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Settings for risk area / danger area alerts

1



Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

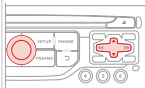


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.


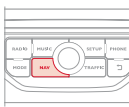

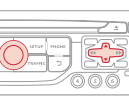






These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.


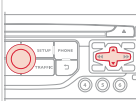

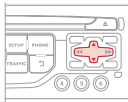

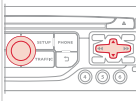

The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at <http://citroen.navigation.com>.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Adding a stage

| | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 1 |  | Press NAV to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu. |  |
| 2 |  | Select " Journey leg and route " then confirm. |  |
| 3 |  | Select " Add a stage " then confirm The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by " Enter an address ", a contact in " Directory ", or " Previous destinations ". |  |
| 4 |  | Select " Close to " a route passing close to the stage or " Strict " for a route passing through the stage. Confirm " OK " to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route. |  |

Organising stages

| | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 1 |  | To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select " Order/delete journey legs " and confirm. |  |
| 2 |  | Select the stage that you want to move in the order. |  |
| 3 |  | Select and confirm to save the modifications. |  |
|  Select " Delete " to delete the stage. | | | |

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

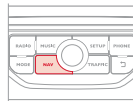
Route options

Calculation criteria

1



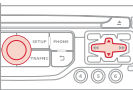
Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



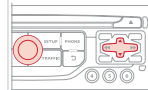
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



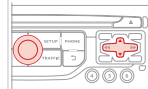
i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

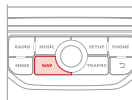
Map management

Selecting the points of interest displayed on the map

1



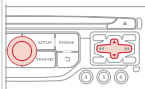
Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



2



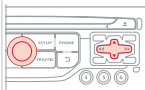
Select **"Map management"** and confirm.



3



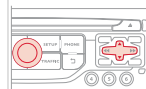
Select **"Map details"** and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

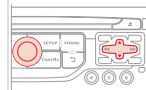


Select **"Default"** to have only **"Filling stations, garages"** and **"Risk areas"** appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



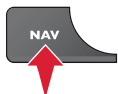
Select **"OK"** then confirm and select **"OK"** again then confirm to save the modifications.



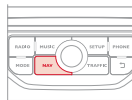
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Map orientation

1



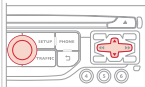
Press **NAV** to display the "Navigation - guidance" menu.



2



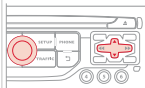
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.

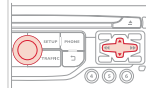


4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.



Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Navigation voice synthesis

Adjusting the volume / Deactivation



The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

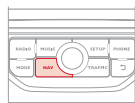


The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the **"SETUP"** / **"Voice synthesis"** menu.

1



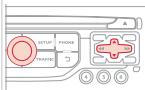
Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



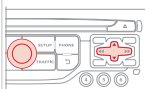
Select **"Guidance options"** and confirm.



3



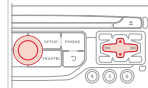
Select **"Set speech synthesis"** and confirm.



4



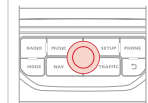
Select the volume graph and confirm.



5



Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.

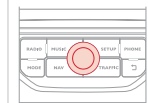


Select **"Deactivate"** to deactivate voice messages.

6



Select **"OK"** and press the dial to confirm.



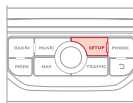
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Male voice / Female voice

1



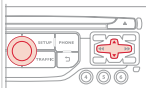
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



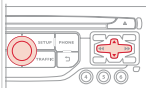
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.

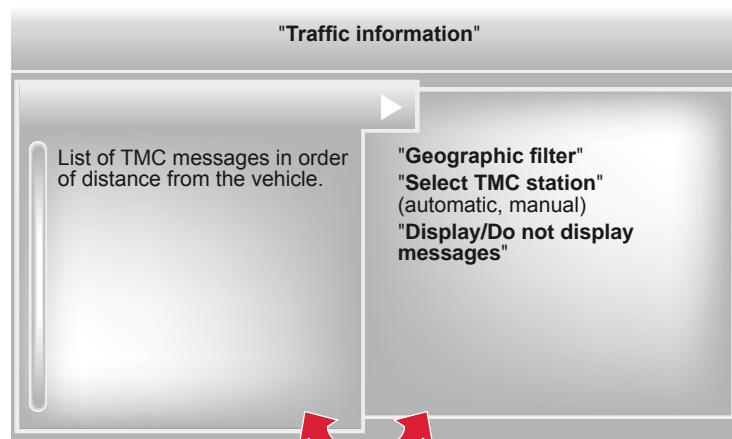


05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



Press "TRAFFIC".



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

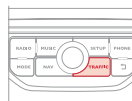
Configure the filtering and display of TMC messages

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages with GPS Navigation provide traffic information in real time.

1



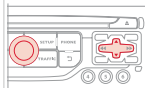
Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the "Traffic information" menu.



2



Select the **"Geographic filter"** function and confirm.

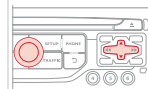


3



The system offers a choice of:

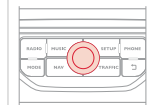
- **"Retain all the messages"**,
- or
- **"Retain the messages"**
 - **"Around the vehicle"**, (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
 - **"On the route"**.



4



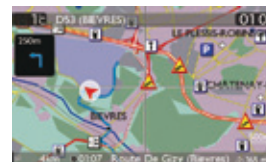
Confirm **"OK"** to save the modifications.



i

We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
 - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
 - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Principal TMC symbols

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:



Weather reports



Traffic reports



Wind



Fog



Parking



Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:



Modified signage



Narrow carriageway



Slippery surface



Accident



Delay



Roadworks



Risk of explosion



Road closed



Demonstration



Danger



No entry



Traffic jam

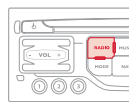
Receiving TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1



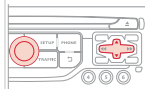
Press **RADIO** to display the menu.



2



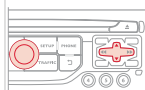
Select "**Service announcements**" then confirm.



3



Activate or deactivate "**TA**" then confirm.



! The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.



TRAFFIC

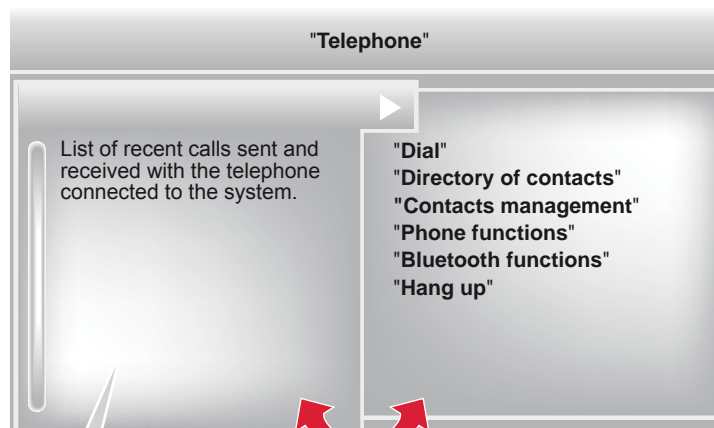
Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button.
During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press this button.



In the top bar of the permanent display



No telephone connected.



Telephone connected.



Incoming call.



Outgoing call.



Synchronisation of contacts in progress.



Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm "OK" to start the call.



Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Pairing a Bluetooth telephone First connection



You can check the compatibility of your telephone at [www.citroen.co.uk \(services\)](http://www.citroen.co.uk/services).

Quick procedure from the telephone

1

In the Bluetooth menu of your telephone, select the name "CITROËN" from the list of devices detected.



2

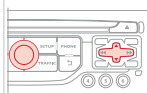
Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



3



Enter the same code in the system, select "OK" and confirm.



For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure from the system

1

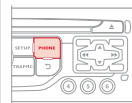
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



2



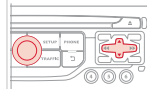
Press this button.



3



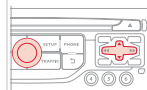
Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.



4



Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.
The list of peripheral devices detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

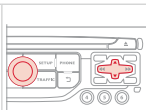


The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

5



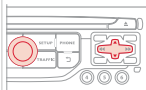
Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then confirm.



6



Select **"Connect"** and confirm.



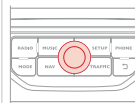
7



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in **"Hands-free mode"** (telephone only),
- in **"Audio"** mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or **"All"** (for selection of both modes).

Select **"OK"** and confirm.



The **"Hands-free mode"** should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.



The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

8

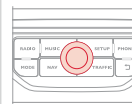
Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



9



Enter the same code in the system, select **"OK"** and confirm.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.



Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



On return to the vehicle, the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible). To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

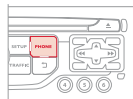
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Directory configuration / Synchronisation with the telephone

1



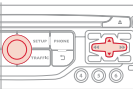
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



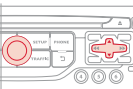
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



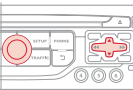
Select "**Sort by Name/First name**" or "**Sort by First name/Name**" to choose the order in which they appear.



2c



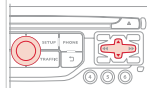
Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.



2d



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.
Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

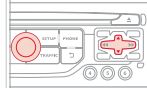


2e



Select "**Synchronization options**":

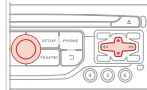
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2f


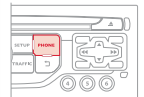

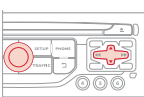

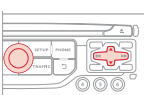

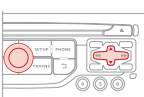

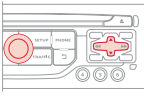




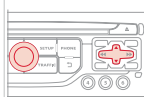
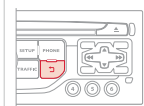
Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Editing, importing or deleting a contact

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>1</p>  | <p>Press PHONE then select "Directory of contacts" and confirm.</p> |  |
| <p>2</p>  | <p>Select "Search", then turn the knob to choose in numerical or alphabetical order a group of contacts from the entries made previously, then confirm. Go to the list of contacts, select the desired contact then confirm.</p> |  |
| <p>3a</p>  | <p>Select "Open" to view a contact on the telephone or modify a contact saved in the system.</p> |  |
| <p>3b</p>  | <p>Select "Import" to copy a contact from the telephone to the system.</p> |  |
| <p>3c</p>  | <p>Select "Delete" to delete a contact recorded in the system.</p> |  |

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>i</p> <p>It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.</p> | |
| <p>i</p> <p>Once the contact has been imported, the Bluetooth symbol disappears, replaced by the telephone symbol which shows that the contact has been saved in the system.</p> | |
| <p>i</p> <p>In the "Directory of contacts" menu, the import and deletion of contacts is done one by one.</p> | |
| <p>4</p>  <p>Select OK or press the back button to exit this menu.</p>  |   |

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

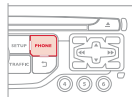
Making a call

Calling a new number

1



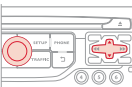
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



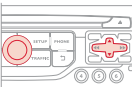
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3



Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.



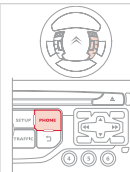
Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

Calling a contact

1



Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2



Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3



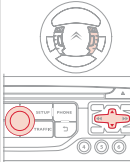
Select the desired contact and confirm.
If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4



Select the number and confirm to start the call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Calling a recently entered number

1

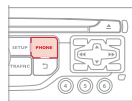


Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,

or



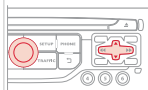
Press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

i

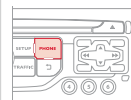
It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

Ending a call

1a



Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



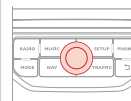
1d



Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.



Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Receiving a call

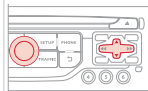
1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2



"**Yes**" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press "**OK**" to accept the call.
Select "**No**" and confirm to reject the call.




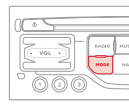
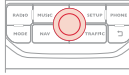


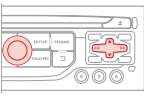

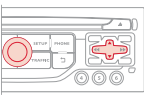

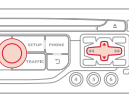



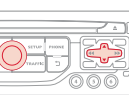


A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.
A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Options during a call*

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>1</p>    <p>During a call, press the MODE button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "OK" to open the contextual menu.</p> <p>Or make a short press on this button.</p> |    | <p>2c</p>  <p>Select "DTMF ring tones" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.</p>  |
| | | <p>2d</p>  <p>Select "Hang up" to end the call.</p>  |
| <p>2a</p>  <p>Select "Private mode" and confirm to take the call on the handset. Or select "Hands-free mode" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.</p> |  | <p> it is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "Conference mode call" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.</p>  |
| <p>2b</p>  <p>Select "Put call on hold" and confirm to put the current call on hold. Or select "Resume the call" and confirm to resume the call on hold.</p> |  | |

* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

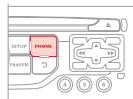
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing paired telephones

1



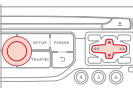
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



Select **"Bluetooth functions"**.



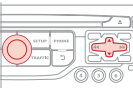
3



Select **"List of the paired peripherals"** and confirm.

- It is possible to:
- **"Connect"** or **"Disconnect"** the selected telephone,
 - delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

It is also possible to select all pairings.

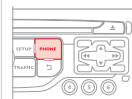


Changing the ringtone

1



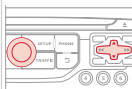
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



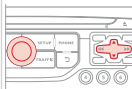
Select **"Phone functions"** and confirm.



3



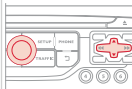
Select **"Ring options"** and confirm.



4



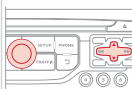
You can adjust the volume and the type of ringtone.



5



Select **"OK"** and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



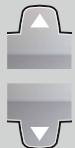
Press **RADIO**.



"FM / AM band"

Alphabetical list of stations
received.

"Change Waveband" ("AM / FM")
"Guidance options" ("TA, RDS")
"Audio settings"
"Update radio list"



Press **▲** or **▼** or use the rotary control to select the
previous or next station in the list.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



07 RADIO

Changing waveband

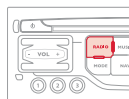


The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.

1



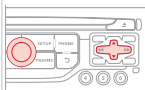
Press **RADIO** or **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



Select **"Change waveband"**.



3



Select **"AM / FM"** and confirm.



Selecting a station



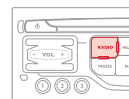
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



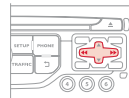
1b



By automatic frequency search

Press **◀** or **▶** for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.

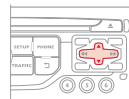


1c



By manual frequency search

Press **▲** or **▼** to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



07 RADIO

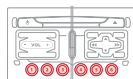
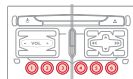
Presetting a station

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.



2



Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.



Activate / Deactivate RDS

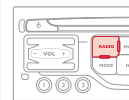


RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



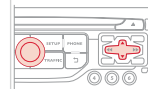
Press **RADIO**.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3



Activate or deactivate "**RDS**" then confirm.

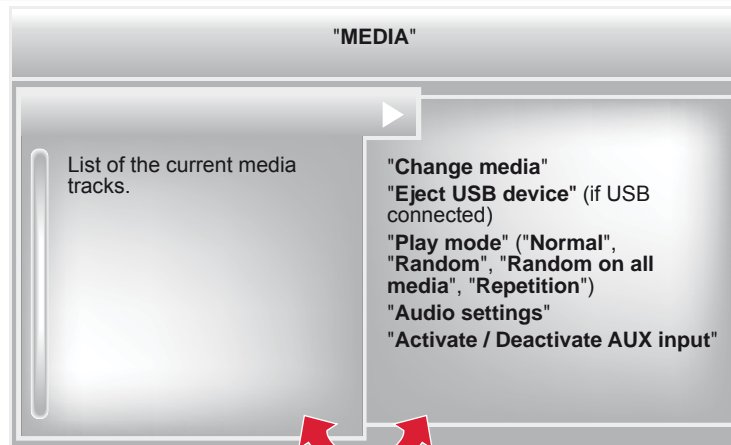


08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB player

Information and advice



The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are greater than 32 KHz.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; u) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format (udf, ...), it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied). If a partitioned USB memory key is connected to the system, only the first partition is recognised.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

The number of tracks is limited to 2000 maximum, 999 tracks per folder.

If the current consumption at the USB port exceeds 500 mA, the system goes into protection mode and deactivates the port.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).



The system does not support the operation of an Apple® player and a USB memory stick connected at the same time.



It is recommended that official Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Sources



Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

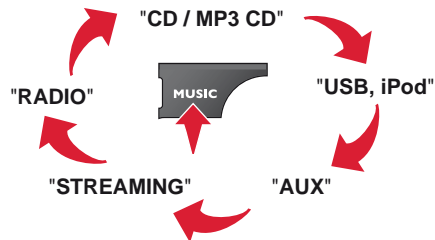
Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.



Selection of source



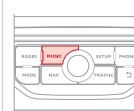
The **MUSIC** button allows a direct change to the next media source.



1



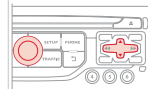
Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MEDIA**" menu.



2













Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.














Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible with **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Selecting a track

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Previous track. |  /  |
| Next track. |  /  |
| Previous folder. |  |
| Next folder. |  |
| Fast forward. | Long press  /  |
| Fast backward. | Long press  /  |

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks and folders

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| |  |
| Up or down in the list. |  /  /  |
| Confirm, next menu level. |  /  /  |
| Up one menu level. |  +  /  /  |

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Connecting APPLE® players

- 1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

- 2 Control is via the audio system.

- i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

- i** The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Audio streaming



Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1

Connect the telephone: refer to the **"USING THE TELEPHONE"** section.
Select **"Audio"** or **"All"** profile.

2

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

!

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate **"Repeat"** on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Using the auxiliary input (AUX) JACK/USB audio cable not supplied

1

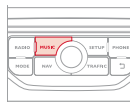
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player...) to the JACK auxiliary audio socket or USB port using a suitable cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "MUSIC" menu.



3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

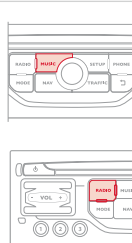
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

09 AUDIO SETTINGS

1



They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.



2

- "Equalizer" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
- "Bass"
- "Treble"
- "Loudness" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "Distribution" ("Driver", "All passengers")
- "Le-Ri balance" (Left/Right)
- "Fr-Re balance" (Front/Rear)
- "Auto. Volume" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

i

On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging.

With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3...) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys® software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, ...) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

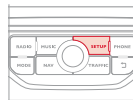
10 CONFIGURATION

Display configuration

1



Press **SETUP** to display the "Configuration" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

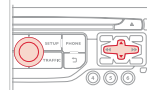


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness. Press "**OK**" to save the changes. The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



MAIN FUNCTION

1 Option A

2 Option A1

3 Option A11

1 Option B...

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

1 Select destination

2 Enter an address

2 Directory

2 GPS coordinates

1 Journey leg and route

2 Add a stage

3 Enter an address

3 Directory

3 Previous destinations

2 Order/delete journey legs

2 Divert route

2 Chosen destination

1 Guidance options

2 Define calculation criteria

3 Fastest route

3 Shortest route

3 Distance/Time

3 With tolls

3 With Ferry

3 Traffic info

2 Set speech synthesis

2 Delete last destinations

2 Set parameters for risk areas

1 Map management

2 Map orientation

3 Vehicle direction

3 North direction

3 Perspective view

2 Map details

2 Move the map

2 Mapping and updating

2 Description of risk areas database

1 Stop / Restore guidance

2 Fastest route

2 Shortest route

2 Distance/Time

2 With tolls

2 With Ferry

2 Traffic info

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"TRAFFIC INFORMATION" MENU

- 1 **Geographic filter**
 - 2 Retain all the messages:
 - 2 Retain the messages:
 - 3 Around the vehicle
 - 3 On the route
- 1 **Select TMC station**
 - 2 Automatic TMC
 - 2 Manual TMC
 - 2 List of TMC stations
- 1 **Display / Do not display messages**

"TELEPHONE" MENU

- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **Directory of contacts**

- 2 **Call**
- 2 **Open**
- 2 **Import**
- 2 **Search**
- 2 **Delete**
- 2 **Cancel**
- 1 **Contacts management**
 - 2 **New contact**
 - 2 **Sort by First name/Name**
 - 2 **Delete all contacts**
 - 2 **Import all the entries**
 - 2 **Synchronization options**
 - 3 No synchronization
 - 3 Display telephone contacts
 - 3 Display SIM card contacts
 - 3 Display all phone contacts

- 2 **Contact mem. status**
- 1 **Phone functions**
 - 2 **Ring options**
 - 2 **Delete calls log**
- 1 **Bluetooth functions**
 - 2 **List of the paired peripherals**
 - 3 Connect
 - 3 Disconnect
 - 3 Delete
 - 3 Delete all
 - 3 Cancel
 - 2 **Peripherals search**
 - 2 **Rename radiotelephone**
- 1 **Hang up**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"RADIO" MENU

1 Change Waveband

2 FM

2 AM

1 Options

2 RDS station tracking

1 Audio settings

2 Equalizer

3 None

3 Classical

3 Jazz

3 Rock

3 Techno

3 Vocal

2 Bass

2 Treble

2 Loudness

3 Activated / Deactivated

2 Distribution

3 Driver

3 All passengers

2 Le-Ri balance

2 Fr-Re balance

2 Auto. Volume

3 Activated / Deactivated

1 Update radio list

"MUSIC" MENU

1 Change Media

2 CD

2 Bluetooth streaming

2 USB/iPod

2 AUX

1 Read mode

2 Normal

2 Random

2 Random on all media

2 Repetition

1 Audio settings

1 Activate / Deactivate AUX input

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"SETUP" MENU

1 Display configuration

2 Choose colour

3 Harmony:

3 Cartography:

4 Day mode

4 Night mode

4 Auto Day/Night

2 Adjust luminosity

2 Set date and time

2 Select units

1 Speech synthesis setting

2 Guidance instructions volume

2 Select male voice/Select female voice

1 Select language

2 Français

2 English

2 Italiano

2 Portuguese

2 Español

2 Deutsch

2 Nederlands

2 Türkçe

2 Polski

2 Русский

2 Cestina

2 Hrvatski

2 Magyar

1 Trip computer

2 Alert log

2 Status of functions

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|---|---|
| The route calculation is not successful. | The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway). | Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options" \ "Define calculation criteria". |
| I am unable to enter my post code. | The system only accepts post codes of up to 7 characters. | |
| The POIs do not appear. | The POIs have not been selected. | Select the POIs in the list of POIs. |
| The risk areas audible warning does not work. | The audible warning is not active. | Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas". |
| The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route. | The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages. | Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria. |
| I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route. | Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads. | Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement. |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|---|--|
| Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time. | On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information. | Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map). |
| | The filters are too restrictive. | Modify the "Geographic filter" settings. |
| | In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information. | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available. |
| The altitude is not displayed. | On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly. | Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage"). |
| | Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary. | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions. |
| I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone. | The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all". |
| | The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system. | You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.citroen.co.uk (services) |
| The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible. | The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone. | Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary. |
| | The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication. | Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...). |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|--|---|
| Some contacts are duplicated in the list. | The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated. | Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts". |
| Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order. | Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order. | Modify the display setting in the telephone directory. |
| The system does not receive SMS text messages. | The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system. | |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player. | <p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the information and advice in the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality. |
| There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick. | When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. | This phenomenon is normal. |
| The CD player sound is poor. | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality. | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions. |
| | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable. | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience. |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

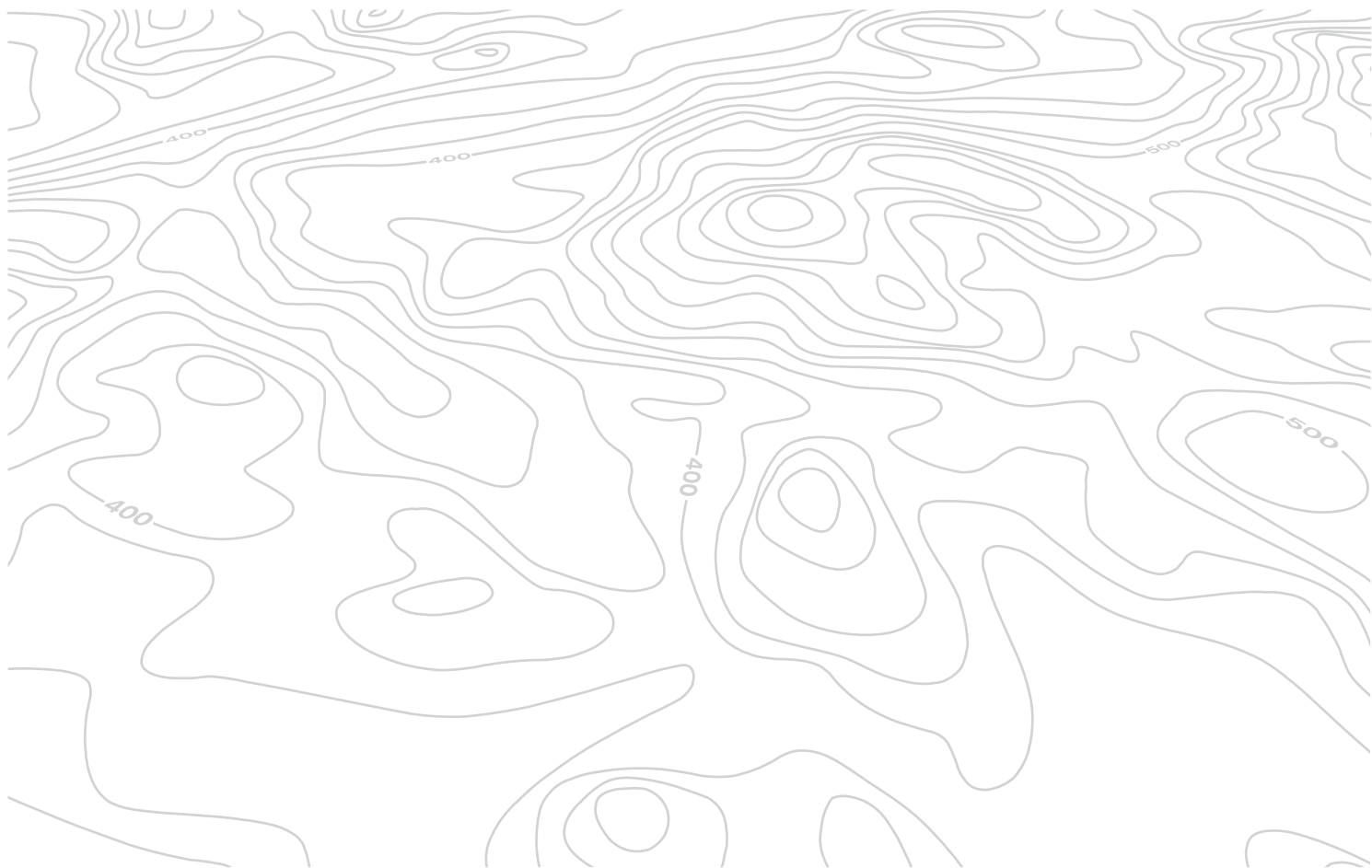
| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|--|---|
| Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing. | The audio system does not read some types of characters. | Use standard characters to name tracks and folders. |
| Playing of streaming files does not start. | The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play. | Start the playback from the device. |
| The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio. | The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information. | |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling. | Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
| | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode. | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system. |
| | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park). | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer. |
| I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. | The station is not received or its name has changed in the list. | |
| | Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). | |
| The name of the radio station changes. | The system interprets this information as the name of the station. | |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|--|--|
| When modifying the treble and bass setting, the choice of ambience is cancelled. | The selection of an ambience imposes specific treble and bass settings. | Modify the treble and bass settings or choose a musical ambience to obtain the desired sound quality. |
| When modifying the ambience, the treble and bass settings are cancelled. | | |
| When modifying the balance settings, the "Driver" or "All passengers" setting is cancelled. | The choice of the "Driver" distribution setting imposes specific balance settings. | |
| When modifying the "Driver" or "All passengers" distribution setting, the balance settings are cancelled. | | |
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...). | Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode. |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|--|---|--|
| With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use. | When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: economy mode is activated automatically to maintain the state of charge of the vehicle's battery, needed for engine starting. (See the "Energy economy mode" section). | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge. |
| Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes). | Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time). | Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick. |
| When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files. | When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players. | Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming). |





Audio system

AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH®



Your Audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.



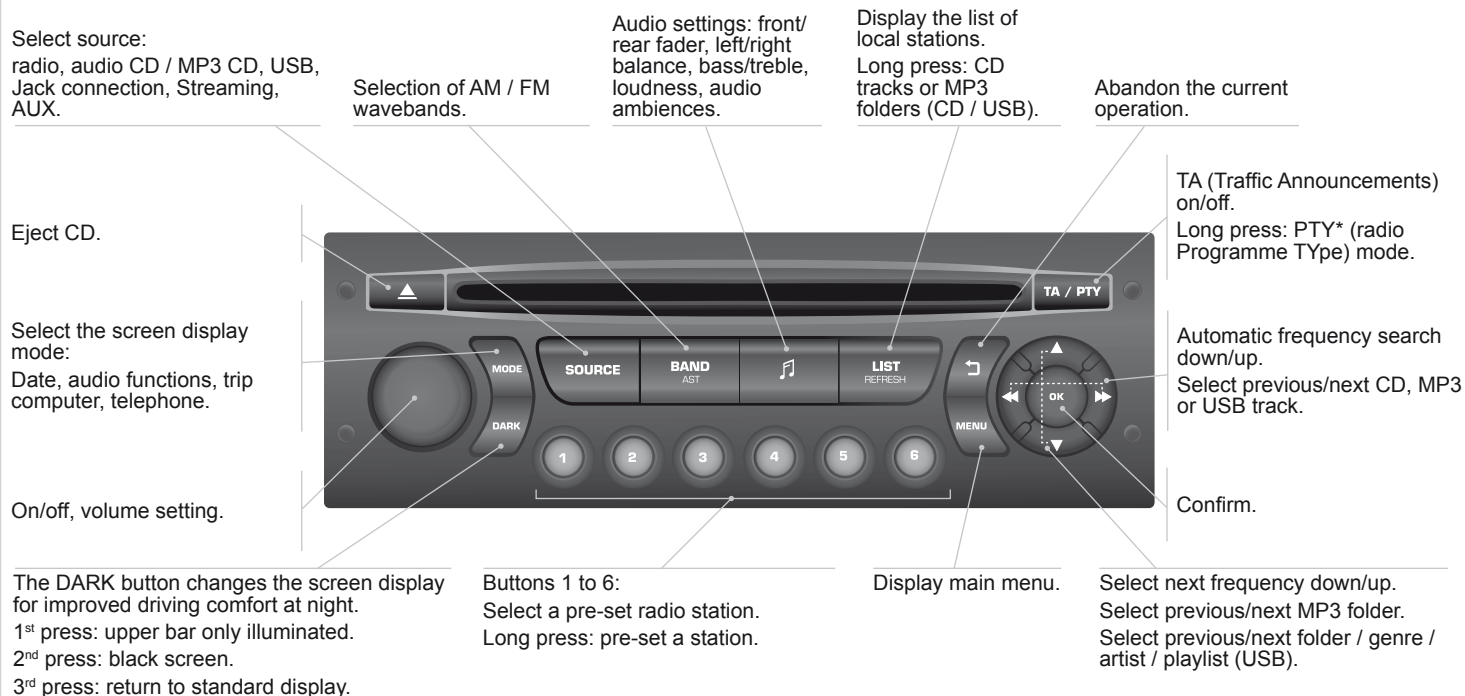
For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 01 First steps | p. 314 |
| 02 Steering mounted controls | p. 315 |
| 03 Main menu | p. 316 |
| 04 Audio | p. 317 |
| 05 USB Box | p. 320 |
| 06 Bluetooth functions | p. 323 |
| 07 Screen menu map(s) | p. 326 |
| Frequently asked questions | p. 329 |

01 FIRST STEPS

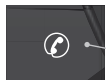


* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS



Activation/deactivation of Black Panel mode (night driving).



Accept an incoming call / end a call in progress.
Open the telephone menu and display the call log.
Long press: reject an incoming call.



Press:
Access to the short-cut menus depending on the display in the screen.



Confirm a function selected from a menu.

Rotation:

Select the previous/next pre-set RADIO station.

Select previous/next CD or MP3 folder.



Abandon the current operation.

Reject an incoming call.

Long press: return to general display.



Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.

Decrease volume.



Mute.



RADIO: automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.

CD / MP3:

select the previous/next track.

press and hold: fast forward/rewind play.



RADIO: display the list of stations available.

Long press: update the list of radio stations.

CD / MP3:

display the list of CD tracks and and folders.

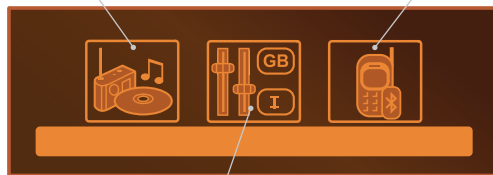


03 MAIN MENU

Screen C

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

**BLUETOOTH - TELEPHONE -
AUDIO:** Bluetooth hands-free, pairing,
management of a call.



DISPLAY CONFIGURATION: vehicle
settings, display, languages.



For a detailed global view of the
menus available, refer to the
"Screen menu map" section.

04 AUDIO



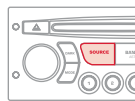
Radio

Selecting a station

1



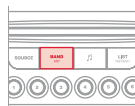
Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



2



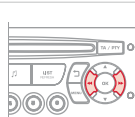
Press the BAND button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



3



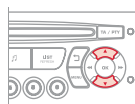
Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



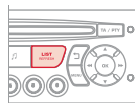
4



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



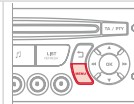
RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

1



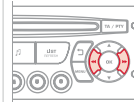
Press the MENU button.



2



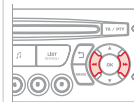
Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



3



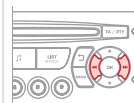
Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4



Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.



In radio mode, press OK directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.



The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

04 AUDIO

Receiving TA messages



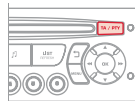
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1

TA / PTY



Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD Playing a CD



Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.

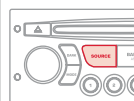
Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

1

SOURCE



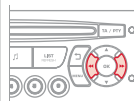
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

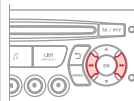


Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or fast backwards.



04 AUDIO

MP3 CD Playing an MP3 compilation



Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.



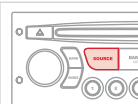
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1



To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.

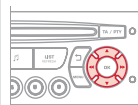


2



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

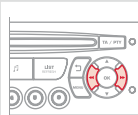


Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD Information and advice



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.



The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.



Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

05 USB PLAYER

Using the USB BOX

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your Audio system and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



Connecting a USB memory stick

1

Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.



The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only) and .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression).

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device. The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* Depending on vehicle.

05 USB PLAYER

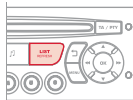
Using the USB PORT

2

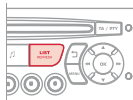
Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.
Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



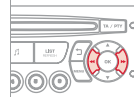
Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.
Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.
Confirm the selection by pressing OK.



3



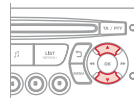
Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



Connecting an Apple® player via the USB port

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).
Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.



Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 USB PLAYER

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)

JACK socket or USB port (according to vehicle)



The auxiliary input, JACK or USB, allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).



Do not connect a device to both the JACK socket and the USB port at the same time.

1

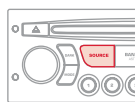
Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the JACK socket or to the USB port, using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



Adjusting the volume of the auxiliary source

1

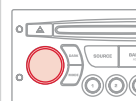
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS



Bluetooth telephone

Screen C

(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

Pairing a telephone / First connection



For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.



Go to www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1

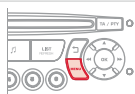
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



2



Press the MENU button.

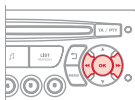


3



In the menu, select:

- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4

A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5

The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.



The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7

A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits. Confirm by pressing OK.



8

A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK. If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9

A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.




The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured. The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

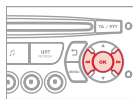
06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS



Receiving a call

- 1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

- 2  Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.




Press this button to accept the call.



Making a call

- 1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

- 2  Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.
Or
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on compatibility, and while the Bluetooth connection with it is maintained.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS



Ending a call

1



During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.
Confirm with OK to end the call.



Bluetooth audio streaming*



Wireless transmission of music files on the telephone, played via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1

Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. Refer to the steps in "Pairing a telephone" on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



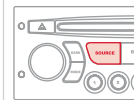
2

Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu. The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3



Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

*** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen C



Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



RADIO

- 1 activate / deactivate RDS
- 1 activate / deactivate REG mode
- 1 activate / deactivate radiotext

CD / MP3 CD

- 1 activate / deactivate Intro
- 1 activate / deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)
- 1 activate / deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

- 1 activate / deactivate track repeat (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)
- 1 activate / deactivate random play (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen C



Pressing the MENU button displays:



MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 **Option A**
 - 2 Option A1
 - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**



AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- 1 **Audio functions**
 - 2 **FM preferences**
 - 3 Alternative frequencies (RDS)
 - 4 activate / deactivate
 - 3 Radio-text information (RDTXT)
 - 4 activate / deactivate
- 2 **Play modes**
 - 3 Album repeat (RPT)
 - 4 activate / deactivate
 - 3 Track random play (RDM)
 - 4 activate / deactivate



DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

- 1 **Adjusting brightness-video**
 - 2 Normal video
 - 2 Inverse video
 - 2 Brightness (- +) adjustment
- 1 **Date and time adjustment**
 - 2 Adjusting the day/month/year
 - 2 Adjusting the hours/minutes
 - 2 Choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
- 1 **Choice of units**
 - 2 °Celsius / °Fahrenheit

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



BLUETOOTH - TELEPHONE - AUDIO

1 Bluetooth configuration

2 Connect/Disconnect an equipment

3 Telephone function

3 Audio Streaming function

2 Consult the paired equipment

2 Delete a paired equipment

2 Perform a Bluetooth search

1 Call

2 Calls list

2 Directory

1 Manage the telephone call

2 Terminate the current call

2 Activate secret mode

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|--|---|---|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...). | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode. |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player. | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system. |
| The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut. | The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged. | Recharge the battery of the peripheral device. |
| | The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt. | Reformat the memory stick. |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|--|--|
| I am unable to access my voicemail. | Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function. | |
| The CD player sound is poor. | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality. | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions. |
| | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable. | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience. |
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | An incorrect waveband is selected. | Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored. |
| The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information. | The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network. | Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information. |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling. | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
| | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode. | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment. |
| | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park). | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer. |

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION | ANSWER | SOLUTION |
|---|--|---|
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode. | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station. | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route. |
| With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use. | When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge. |
| The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display. | In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD. | Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool. |

A

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| ABS and EBD systems | 156 |
| Accessories | 228 |
| Accessory socket, 12 volt | 89 |
| Adjusting headlamps | 147 |
| Adjusting head restraints | 58, 66 |
| Adjusting seat belt height | 160 |
| Adjusting the steering wheel | 62 |
| Advice on care and maintenance | 227 |
| Advice on driving | 96 |
| Airbags | 163 |
| Airbags, curtain | 165, 167 |
| Airbags, front | 164, 167 |
| Airbags, lateral | 165, 167 |
| Airbag warning lamp | 32 |
| Air conditioning | 13, 68, 69, 73 |
| Air conditioning, dual-zone | 73 |
| Air conditioning, mono-zone | 69 |
| Air diffuser | 67 |
| Air distribution adjustment | 70, 74 |
| Air filter | 239 |
| Air flow adjustment | 71, 75 |
| Air intake | 72, 75 |
| Air recirculation | 72, 75 |
| Air vents | 67, 68 |
| Alarm | 44 |
| Alert / warning log | 20, 38 |
| Alloy wheels | 227 |
| Anti-lock braking system (ABS) | 156 |
| Anti-pinch | 47, 55, 57 |
| Anti-theft | 97 |
| Armrest, front | 88 |
| Armrest, rear | 89 |
| Assistance call | 155, 257, 258 |

| | |
|--|------------------------|
| Audible warning | 155 |
| Audio streaming (Bluetooth) | 298, 325 |
| Audio system | 313 |
| Automatic illumination of headlamps | 143, 146 |
| Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps | 154 |
| Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers | 150, 152 |
| Auxiliary sockets | 88, 298, 299, 320, 322 |

B

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------|
| Battery | 216-218, 239 |
| Battery, charging | 217-218 |
| Battery, remote control | 42, 43 |
| Blind for panoramic sunroof | 55, 56 |
| Blinds | 90 |
| Bluetooth (hands-free) | 282, 323 |
| Bluetooth (telephone) | 282, 323 |
| Bonnet | 231 |
| Bonnet stay | 231 |
| Boot | 52, 53 |
| Boot (fittings) | 91, 92 |
| Brake discs | 241 |
| Brake lamps | 203, 205 |
| Brake pads | 241 |
| Braking assistance system | 156 |

C

| | |
|--|----------------------|
| Capacity, fuel tank | 183 |
| CD MP3 | 295, 319 |
| Central locking | 40, 49 |
| Changing a bulb | 199-209 |
| Changing a fuse | 210-215 |
| Changing a wheel | 192-197 |
| Changing a wiper blade | 153 |
| Changing the remote control battery | 42 |
| CHECK | 20 |
| Checking levels | 235-238 |
| Checking the engine oil level | 23, 235 |
| Checks | 231-241 |
| Children | 162, 168-182 |
| Child seats | 168-181 |
| Child seats, conventional | 174, 175 |
| Child seats, ISOFIX | 178, 180, 181 |
| CITROËN Localised Assistance Call | 155, 258 |
| CITROËN Localised Emergency Call | 155, 258 |
| Cleaning (advice) | 227 |
| Closing the boot | 40 |
| Closing the doors | 40, 49 |
| Cold climate screen | 226 |
| Connectors, audio | 88, 298-299, 320-322 |
| Control for panoramic sunroof blind | 55, 56 |
| Coolant level | 24, 237 |
| Coolant temperature indicator | 24 |
| Courtesy lamps | 83 |
| Cruise control | 131 |
| Cup holder | 88, 89 |

D

| | |
|---|---------------|
| Date (setting)..... | 36, 38 |
| Daytime running lamps..... | 145, 199 |
| Deactivating ESP..... | 158 |
| Deactivating the passenger airbag..... | 164 |
| Deadlocking..... | 41 |
| Defrosting..... | 72, 76 |
| Demisting..... | 72, 76 |
| Demisting the rear screen..... | 72, 76 |
| Diesel additive level..... | 238 |
| Dimensions..... | 252 |
| Dipped beam..... | 142, 199 |
| Dipstick..... | 23, 235 |
| Directional lighting..... | 148, 149 |
| Direction indicators..... | 154, 199, 205 |
| Doors..... | 49 |
| Doors emergency control..... | 51 |
| Driving economically..... | 13 |
| Driving positions (storing)..... | 61 |
| Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... | 28, 157 |

E

| | |
|--|-----|
| EBA (Emergency braking assistance)..... | 156 |
| Eco-driving..... | 13 |
| Economy mode..... | 219 |
| Electric window controls..... | 47 |
| Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)..... | 156 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Electronic engine immobiliser..... | 43, 97 |
| Electronic gearbox system..... | 13, 111, 121, 218, 240 |
| Emergency boot release..... | 52 |
| Emergency braking system..... | 156 |
| Emergency call..... | 155, 257, 258 |
| Emergency warning lamps..... | 154 |
| eMyWay..... | 37, 259 |
| Energy economy mode..... | 219 |
| Engine compartment..... | 232, 233 |
| Engine compartment fusebox..... | 214 |
| Engine, Diesel..... | 185, 233 |
| Engine oil..... | 235 |
| Engine oil level indicator..... | 23, 235 |
| Engine, petrol..... | 185, 232 |
| Engines..... | 242, 245 |
| Environment..... | 13, 43, 81, 124, 218, 238 |
| Equipment settings..... | 302, 326 |

F

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| Filling with fuel..... | 183-185 |
| Fitting a wheel..... | 196 |
| Fitting roof bars..... | 224 |
| Fittings, boot..... | 91, 92 |
| Flashing indicators..... | 154 |
| Foglamps, front..... | 144, 202 |
| Foglamps, rear..... | 144, 203, 205 |
| Folding the rear seats..... | 65 |
| Front seats..... | 58, 59, 61 |
| Fuel..... | 13, 183, 185 |

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| Fuel consumption..... | 13 |
| Fuel filler cap..... | 183 |
| Fuel filler flap..... | 183, 184 |
| Fuel gauge..... | 24, 183 |
| Fuel tank..... | 183, 184 |
| Fusebox, dashboard..... | 211 |
| Fuses..... | 210 |

G

| | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Gearbox, automatic..... | 13, 116, 218, 240 |
| Gearbox, electronic..... | 111, 240 |
| Gearbox, manual..... | 13, 109, 110, 120, 121, 240 |
| Gear efficiency indicator..... | 120 |
| Gear lever, automatic gearbox..... | 116 |
| Gear lever, electronic gearbox system..... | 111 |
| Gear lever, manual gearbox..... | 109, 110 |
| Glove box..... | 86 |
| G.P.S..... | 265 |
| Guidance..... | 265 |
| Guide-me-home..... | 145, 146 |

H

| | |
|---------------------------|----------|
| Hands-free kit..... | 282, 323 |
| Hazard warning lamps..... | 154 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Headlamp adjustment..... | 147 |
| Headlamps, directional..... | 147, 149 |
| Headlamp wash | 151 |
| Headlamp wash reservoir..... | 238 |
| Head restraints, front..... | 58, 60 |
| Head restraints, rear..... | 65, 66 |
| Heated seats..... | 60 |
| Heating..... | 68, 69, 74 |
| Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel | 62 |
| High load retaining net..... | 94 |
| Hill start assist..... | 108 |
| Horn..... | 155 |
| Hydractive III+ suspension | 140 |

I

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| Identification plates..... | 256 |
| Ignition..... | 97 |
| Indicators, direction | 154 |
| Inflating tyres | 13, 256 |
| Inputs for audio system..... | 88, 298, 299, 320, 322 |
| Instrument panel lighting | 25 |
| Instrument panels | 15 |
| Instrument panel screen | 15, 120 |
| Interior fittings..... | 86 |
| Interior mood lighting | 84 |
| ISOFIX mountings..... | 178 |

J

| | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Jack..... | 192 |
| JACK socket..... | 88, 298, 299, 320, 322 |

K

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Keeping children safe | 162, 168-182 |
| Key in ignition warning..... | 99 |
| Key with remote control | 39-43, 97 |

L

| | |
|---|----------|
| Labels, identification..... | 256 |
| Lamps, warning and indicator | 26-33 |
| Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) | 134 |
| Level, brake fluid..... | 237 |
| Level, headlamp wash | 238 |
| Level, power steering fluid..... | 237 |
| Levels and checks | 232-241 |
| Lighting..... | 84 |
| Lighting bulbs (replacement)..... | 199-209 |
| Lighting control stalk..... | 142 |
| Lighting dimmer | 25 |
| Lighting, guide-me home..... | 145, 146 |
| Lighting, interior | 83 |
| Lighting on reminder | 144 |
| Loading | 13 |

M

| | |
|------------------------------|----|
| Load space cover..... | 93 |
| Locating your vehicle..... | 42 |
| Locking from the inside..... | 49 |

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| Main beam | 142, 199 |
| Maintenance | 13 |
| Maintenance (advice)..... | 227 |
| Map reading lamps | 83 |
| Markings, identification..... | 256 |
| Massage function | 60 |
| Mat | 87 |
| Menu, main | 16, 316 |
| Mirror, rear view | 64 |
| Mirrors, door..... | 63 |
| Misfuel prevention..... | 184 |
| Mountings for ISOFIX seats | 178 |
| MP3 CD..... | 295, 319 |
| Multifunction screen..... | 34 |
| Music media players | 294 |

N

| | |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Navigation | 265 |
| Number plate lamps..... | 207 |

O

| | |
|---|---------|
| Oil change | 235 |
| Oil consumption | 235 |
| Oil filter | 239 |
| Oil level | 23, 235 |
| Oil temperature indicator | 24 |
| Opening the bonnet | 231 |
| Opening the boot | 40 |
| Opening the doors | 39, 49 |
| Opening the fuel filler flap | 183 |
| Opening the panoramic sunroof blind | 55, 56 |
| Opening the sunroof | 55 |
| Operation indicator lamps | 26-33 |

P

| | |
|---|------------------------|
| Paint colour code | 256 |
| Paintwork, matt | 227 |
| Panoramic glass sunroof | 56 |
| Parking brake | 100, 101, 241 |
| Parking brake, electric | 27, 101 |
| Parking sensors, rear | 137 |
| Parking space sensor | 135 |
| Particle filter | 238, 240 |
| Passenger compartment filter | 239 |
| Player, CD MP3 | 295, 319 |
| Port, USB | 88, 298, 299, 320, 322 |
| Priming the fuel system | 187 |
| Programmable heating (Webasto) | 77 |
| Protecting children | 162, 168-182 |
| Puncture | 188 |

R

| | |
|---|----------|
| Radio | 291, 317 |
| Reading lamps, rear | 83 |
| Rear demisting | 69, 73 |
| Recharging the battery | 217, 218 |
| Regeneration of the particle filter | 240 |
| Reinitialising the electric windows | 48 |
| Reinitialising the remote control | 42 |
| Reinitialising the sunroof | 55 |
| Remote control | 39-43 |
| Removable screen (snow shield) | 226 |
| Removing a wheel | 194 |
| Removing the mat | 87 |
| Repair kit, puncture | 188 |
| Replacing bulbs | 199-209 |
| Replacing fuses | 210-215 |
| Replacing the air filter | 239 |
| Replacing the oil filter | 239 |
| Replacing the passenger compartment filter | 239 |
| Replacing wiper blades | 153 |
| Resetting the service indicator | 22 |
| Resetting the trip recorder | 25 |
| Rev counter | 15 |
| Reversing camera | 139 |
| Reversing lamp | 203, 205 |
| Risk areas (update) | 270 |
| Roof bars | 224 |
| Routine checks | 239-241 |
| Running out of fuel (Diesel) | 187 |

S

| | |
|--|--|
| Safety for children | 162, 168-182 |
| Screen, colour and mapping | 263, 302 |
| Screen menu map | 302, 326 |
| Screen, monochrome C | 34, 316, 326, 327 |
| Screen, colour | 37 |
| Screenwash fluid level | 238 |
| Screenwash, front | 151 |
| Screen-wash reservoir | 238 |
| Seat adjustment | 58, 59 |
| Seat belts | 160-162, 174 |
| Seats, rear | 65 |
| Security bolts | 194, 197 |
| Serial number, vehicle | 256 |
| Service indicator | 21, 22 |
| Servicing | 13, 22 |
| Setting the clock | 36, 38 |
| Short-cut menus | 264 |
| Sidelamps | 142, 199, 203, 205 |
| Side repeater | 199 |
| Ski flap | 90 |
| Snow chains | 198 |
| SNOW MOTION | 157 |
| Spare wheel | 192, 197 |
| Speed limiter | 128 |
| Speedometer | 15 |
| Starting the engine | 97 |
| Steering mounted controls | 262, 315 |
| Steering wheel, fixed centred controls | 126 |
| Stopping the vehicle | 97 |
| Stop & Start | 19, 72, 76, 121, 183, 216, 231, 239 |
| Storage compartments | 88 |
| Storing driving positions | 61 |
| Stowing rings | 91 |

Sunroof.....55, 56
 Sun visor86
 Suspension, electronic control140
 Switching off the engine97
 Synchronising the remote control.....42
 Synthesiser, voice.....276
 System, navigation.....265

T

Table of weights243, 244, 247-251
 Tables of engines.....242, 245
 Tables of fuses.....210
 Tank, fuel.....184
 Technical data.....242-256
 Telephone282, 323
 Temperature adjustment.....69, 74
 Temperature control for heated seats60
 Temperature, coolant.....24
 Temporary puncture repair kit188
 Three flashes function (direction indicators)...154
 TMC (Traffic info)279
 Tools.....192
 Total distance recorder25
 Towbar.....222
 Towing another vehicle221
 Traction control (ASR)28, 157
 Traffic information (TA)280, 318
 Traffic information (TMC).....279, 280
 Trailer222
 Trajectory control systems.....157

Trip computer18, 19
 Trip distance recorder.....25
 Tyre pressures256
 Tyres.....13
 Tyre under-inflation detection124, 197

U

Under-inflation (detection)124
 Unlocking39
 Unlocking from the inside49
 Update risk areas.....270
 USB player.....320

V

Vehicle configuration34, 37, 301, 326
 Vehicle identification.....256
 Ventilation67, 68, 71, 75
 Very cold protection.....225

W

Warning lamps26-33
 Washing (advice).....227

Wash-wipe, rear.....151
 Weights243, 244, 247-251
 Welcome function61
 Welcome lighting.....84
 Wheel, changing.....192
 Window controls47
 Wiper control stalk150-152
 Wiper, rear.....151
 Wipers150, 152

X

Xenon headlamps199

Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the new vehicle warranty.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

07-14

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroën.com

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



14.C5.0040

Anglais

2014 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD

4Dconcept

Diadeis

Entagos

